本书已以各种形式在社会上广为流传，包括大量的盗版，我本人虽深恶痛绝，但毕竟让许多迫切想学好英语而又无路可走的学子受益匪浅，这倒给了我莫大安慰。

我想借此机会引用一句我非常喜欢的名言，这也正是我出版本书的目的所在：

未来真正可以持久的竞争优势，或许是比竞争对手更快的学习能力。

——阿里·迪哲斯 荷兰皇家壳牌公司企划人员

这也是本课程的目的所在，也是为什么能在20小时教学中从This is……直达较高水平的关键所在。

本教程是一套完整的教学体系，课课相连，环环相扣，无论你是中学生，还是大学生都应该从第一课学起，不要认为第一课容易，也不要怕最后几课难，就像攀登金字塔，要一步一步登上顶端，否则会有空中楼阁的感觉。

本课程适用于初三以上直至考大学四、六级的学生，包括准备参加出国留学考试或已有500单词以上的自学者。初级者可根据自己的水平及接受能力先学前半部分，然后慢慢推进；大学生可一气呵成，通过学习本书能够真正了解英语体系，培养正确的语感最终融会贯通。

总之，本教程采用由浅入深，深入浅出的教学方式，注重语言规律，注重思考，注重学习方法，注重中英文的比较。我们相信本书会对您一生的学习产生重大的影响。

真的！我只想带你走一条学习英语的捷径，如果这个世界上还有捷径的话。这一切仅源于我深深地知道——你学的太累了！

最后，我衷心的感谢我的两位老师。我国外交部的语言专家陈镇屏老师（已去逝）——他对本书主体思想的形成起到了重要的影响。
我在加拿大学习期间的Jounna老师——本书的重要指导思想“给你一条鱼，你只吃一天；教会你捕鱼，你能享用终生。”就是她送给我的——作为一个教室的座右铭。

编者
2013年7月
四级教程虽自成一体，但是建立在一、二、三级学完的基础之上，为了便于学习特做以下说明：

1. 本教程前几课仅仅是对二、三级教程的简单复习，一带而过，不可作为基础较差学生教学之用，基础不好的同学，在理解上会造成困难，建议从二级学起，否则事倍功半。切记：欲速则不达。
2. 本教程进度加快，虽然一些课程名称与二、三级课名相同，但其深度难度都有较大程度的提高，万不可跳过，扎实基础才是考试高分的根本。
3. 本教程内的所有练习，一定要认真完成，然后对照答案，认真听讲评，找出错误的原因，举一反三。
4. 书内不少原理很难用文字生动地表达，最好有辅导老师讲解或上网听课（网址：www.teachersun.com）。
5. 基础较差的学生，建议先学二级，扎实基础，然后再进行本课程学习，事半而功倍。

编者的话

本系统教学课程目的是让学生在一个轻松的环境里愉快地学习英语，在学习中体会成功的快乐！所以在课程教学中把我个人的人生感悟、励志名言、学习方法与技巧融入其中。

“教育不是注满一桶水，而是点燃一把火。”是本课程教学的灵魂与精髓所在，作为一名教育从业者、引领者，最大的欣慰不是有多少学生从我的课堂毕业，而是希望他们从这里毕业后，在以后人生大舞台上取得更大的成功。这套理论体系用中英文思维比较法进行教学，使学生短期内达到顿悟，让学生学有所乐、学有所思、学有所成。

为此我把这套体系分为四级，目的是便于学生学习与掌握，并在学习中不断体会成功与快乐！

各级学生学习设计与要求（建议逐级学习，不要跳级）
### 学习要求

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>学习要求</th>
<th>学习课时</th>
<th>学完效果</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>单词量在400以上的学生</td>
<td>14课时</td>
<td>1、建立学生学习英语的自信&lt;br&gt;2、让学生理解正确的英语表达方式与思维模式&lt;br&gt;3、学生实现正确的英语口语表达与极强的口语表现欲&lt;br&gt;4、为以后的英语学习奠定良好基础&lt;br&gt;5、《新概念》2册，初一同等或略高教材听、说、读、写、译无障碍</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 《三句通简单英语》二级:

适用于初二水平或基础较弱的学生在学完一级课程后学习。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>学习要求</th>
<th>学习课时</th>
<th>学完效果</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>单词量在600以上的学生</td>
<td>23课时</td>
<td>1、建立学生学习英语的自信&lt;br&gt;2、让学生理解正确的英语表达方式与思维模式&lt;br&gt;3、学生实现正确的英语口语表达与极强的口语表现欲&lt;br&gt;4、为以后的英语学习奠定良好基础&lt;br&gt;5、《新概念》2册，初二同等或略高教材听、说、读、写、译无障碍</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 《三句通简单英语》三级:

适用于初三水平及已学完二级课程的学生学习。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>学习要求</th>
<th>学习课时</th>
<th>学完效果</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>单词量在800以上的学生</td>
<td>24课时</td>
<td>1、建立学生学习英语的自信&lt;br&gt;2、让学生理解正确的英语表达方式与思维模式&lt;br&gt;3、基本掌握英语的语言规律，能够比较熟练的运用英语交流、写作&lt;br&gt;4、初三同等或略高教材听、说、读、写、译无障碍&lt;br&gt;5、配合中考秘籍，中考成绩达到110分以上</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 《三句通简单英语》四级:

适用于高中以上水平及已学完三级课程的学生学习。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>学习要求</th>
<th>学习课时</th>
<th>学完效果</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>单词量在1000以上的学生</td>
<td>37课时</td>
<td>1、建立学生学习英语的自信&lt;br&gt;2、让学生理解正确的英语表达方式与思维模式&lt;br&gt;3、完全掌握英语的语言规律，能够随心所欲地用英语交流、写作&lt;br&gt;4、配合高考秘籍，高考成绩达到125分以上</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

● 《三句通简单英语》一级:

适用于小学五年级至初一学生或基础较弱的初学者作为入门课程。
LESSON ONE 句子的三种模式 (BE与THERE BE句型) .............................. 1
LESSON TWO 句子的三种模式(DO句型) ............................................. 7
LESSON THREE 四种一般时与特殊疑问句 .......................................... 12
LESSON FOUR 四种进行时态 .......................................................... 19
LESSON FIVE 三个句型复习与宾语从句 .............................................. 24
LESSON SIX 基本句型复习 .............................................................. 32
LESSON SEVEN 动词的基本模式 ....................................................... 35
LESSON EIGHT 四种完成时态(1) ..................................................... 39
LESSON NINE 四种完成时态(2) ....................................................... 47
LESSON TEN 四种完成进行时态 ....................................................... 55
LESSON ELEVEN 被动语态 .............................................................. 58
LESSON TWELVE 学习方法七要素 ................................................... 64
LESSON THIRTEEN 时态复习 .......................................................... 65
LESSON FOURTEEN 名词性从句(1) .................................................. 73
LESSON FIFTEEN 名词性从句(2) ..................................................... 78
LESSON SIXTEEN 定语从句(1) ........................................................ 83
LESSON SEVENTEEN 定语从句(2) ................................................... 87
LESSON EIGHTEEN 状语从句 .......................................................... 94
LESSON NINETEEN 高考原卷单选分析 .............................................. 105
LESSON TWENTY 动词不定式（1） .................................................. 107
LESSON TWENTY ONE 动词不定式 (2) .............................................. 112
LESSON TWENTY TWO 动词不定式(3) .............................................. 114
LESSON TWENTY THREE 动词不定式 (4) ....................................... 116
LESSON TWENTY FOUR 动名词 ...................................................... 121
LESSON TWENTY FIVE 分词 .......................................................... 130
LESSON TWENTY SIX 虚拟语气 ...................................................... 140
LESSON TWENTY SEVEN 情态动词与动词习惯用法 ................................ 156
LESSON TWENTY EIGHT 主谓一致、倒装句及强调句 ............................ 161
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Number</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson One</td>
<td>句子的三种模式 (BE 与 THERE BE 句型)</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Two</td>
<td>句子的三种模式 (DO 句型)</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Three</td>
<td>四种一般时与特殊疑问句</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Four</td>
<td>四种进行时态</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Five</td>
<td>三个句型复习与宾语从句</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Six</td>
<td>基本句型复习</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Seven</td>
<td>动词的基本模式</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Eight</td>
<td>四种完成时态 (1)</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Nine</td>
<td>四种完成时态 (2)</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Ten</td>
<td>四种完成进行时态</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Eleven</td>
<td>被动语态</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Thirteen</td>
<td>时态复习</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Fourteen</td>
<td>名词性从句 (1)</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Fifteen</td>
<td>名词性从句 (2)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Sixteen</td>
<td>定语从句 (1)</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Seventeen</td>
<td>定语从句 (2)</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Eighteen</td>
<td>状语从句</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Nineteen</td>
<td>高考原卷单选分析</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty</td>
<td>动词不定式 (1)</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty One</td>
<td>动词不定式 (2)</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Two</td>
<td>动词不定式 (3)</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Three</td>
<td>动词不定式 (4)</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Four</td>
<td>动名词</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Five</td>
<td>分词</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Six</td>
<td>虚拟语气</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Seven</td>
<td>情态动词与动词习惯用法</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Twenty Eight</td>
<td>主谓一致、倒装句及强调句</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
我们希望我们的课不像在你们学校里，我们俩人只是你们的朋友，和你们聊天，讲故事，在一种轻松的对话中，帮助大家在三十个小时内成为你们班里最好的学生，让你们的英语甚至超过你们的老师。这是的不是广告，只要你能听三十个小时。

为什么学英语那么困难？

讲个农民与渔民的故事：

### 改变思维方式

#### 农民与渔民

地理位置决定了文化背景
其实英语只有三种基本句型

英语第一种句型——be句型

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词序</th>
<th>1 主语</th>
<th>2 系动词（旗帜）</th>
<th>3 表语</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>句型含义</td>
<td>句子的主体人或物</td>
<td>用于连接主语和表语相当于一个国家的旗帜</td>
<td>1. 表示主语身份 2. 表示状态 3. 表示所处的位置</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>词性</td>
<td>名词代词</td>
<td>be (is, am, are)</td>
<td>1. 名词 2. 形容词 3. 介词+名词（介词短语）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*注: 注意该结构中的名词，它们能被定语修饰。

1. 这个人是 一个老师。
   The man is a teacher.

2. 他很忙。
   He is busy.

3. 她在教室里。
   She is in the classroom.

▲ 注意中文中的系动词经常被省略，而英文中绝不能省。
口头作业

要求:
背诵下列句子肯定、否定及疑问句，做到时态不错，不结巴！请家长监督并鼓励孩子认真完成。

现在时
肯定: You are rich.
否定: You are not rich.
疑问: Are you rich?

要求:
用下列人称分别替换上面九个句子，注意时态不错，不结巴！请老师家长监督并鼓励孩子认真完成。

you he she they I

孙老师提示:
定语只修饰名词，不破坏句子的基本结构。通常由形容词和介词短语充当，形容词放在所修饰的名词之前，而介词短语放在所修饰的名词之后，请注意英语与汉语词序的不同。看懂中文的定语是翻译好英文定语的关键。注意下列句子的结构，并进行口头练习。

1、幸福是太多和太少之间的一站。——英国法学家 波洛克

介词短语
Happiness is a station between too much and too little.

形容词 介词短语
The tall man is a teacher from England.

2、高个子的 从英国来的 男人是老师。

形容词 介词短语
She is in the small classroom on the second floor.
孙老师提示：
介词短语既可以做表语也可以做定语，虽然它们词性相同，但由于词序不同，它们所起到的作用也不同，当在is的后面是表语，跟在名词的后面它就起到定语的作用。注意下列句子的结构，并进行口头练习。

1. The teacher in the classroom is handsome.

2. My book is on the desk in the classroom.

表语 (介词短语) 定语 (介词短语)
3. She is in the small classroom on the second floor.

孙老师提示：
在开始做练习之前，务必提醒学生不要犯下列错误。

中国人学习英语最容易犯的错误
1、举什么旗子 (be、there be)。
2、肯定、否定、疑问。
3、冠词。
4、单数、复数。
5、定语的位置。

1、教室里的那个人是 一个 从英国来的 老师。

2、二楼 教室里 桌子上的 钱 不是 我的。

3、我的家乡 在两山之间的 峡谷(valley) 里。

4、拿着刀的 那个贼 就在你的卧室里的 门后面(behind)。

课堂练习（2）

1、医院里的那个傻子(fool) 是从英国来的。

2、那个从英国来的傻子在医院里。

3、教室里靠窗户的桌子上的那台电脑(computer) 是新的。

4、你们班里的那个漂亮的女孩子是个贼(thief)。
孙老师提示：

英语第二个句型的旗子是there be（there is/are），同样它在中文中也不能片面地对应成“有”。当英国人举起there be这面旗子的时候，他们想表达什么地方存在什么。

△谓+主+状

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词序</th>
<th>3 状语</th>
<th>1 谓语（旗子）</th>
<th>2 主语</th>
<th>3 状语</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>句型含义</td>
<td>地点</td>
<td>存在</td>
<td>物或人</td>
<td>地点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>词性</td>
<td>介词+名词（介词短语）</td>
<td>there be</td>
<td>名词</td>
<td>介词+名词（介词短语）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

注：该句型通常用于表达某地存在某物（人）。

孙老师提示：

在该结构中，强调状语时，状语可以置于句首。

1、房间内有张桌子。
   某地 there is 被物
   There is a table in the room.
   =In the room, there is a table.

2、我们家有五口人。
   某地 there are 被人
   There are five people in my family.

孙老师提示：

如果需要，该种句型中名词同样可被定语修饰，请看例句。

3、二楼的房间里有一张大桌子。
   介词短语              形容词
   There is a big table in the room on the second floor.
   There is a big table in the room on the second floor in the building in the school.

there be句型时态的变化

孙老师提示：

在there be句型中同样有时态的变化，它的变化与be句型相同。
口头作业

思维方式的转变及养成良好的语言习惯，直至最终语感的形成，都需要初学者高频率地重复。为此我们设计了口头作业并尽可能精简，让学生在不知不觉中说一口流利的英语，同时具备地道的书面表达能力。

There is a table in the classroom.
There isn’t a table in the classroom.
Is there a table in the classroom?

There are tables in the classroom.
There are not tables in the classroom.
Are there tables in the classroom?

课堂练习（3）

(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1、你们学校附近的医院 (hospital) 里有五位从美国来的医生吗?
2、卧室里桌子上电脑旁边的钱是你姐姐的吗?
3、卧室里床底下的盒子里的那个旧钱包 (wallet) 是你的吗?
4、树上面的那个红苹果 (apple) 旁边的那只蓝色的鸟 (blue bird) 是从南方来的吗?
5、宾馆前面 (in front of) 的那个胖女人是从香港来的记者 (reporter) 吗?

代词的几种基本形式

孙老师提示:
牢记下列人称代词的几种基本形式。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主格</th>
<th>宾格</th>
<th>形容词性所有格</th>
<th>名词性所有格</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示:
形容词性物主代词后必须加名词，名词性物主代词可独立使用，起到名词的作用。
This is my book. (形容词词性的物主代词)
The book is mine. (名词词性的物主代词)

This is your book.
The book is yours.

These are their books.
The books are theirs.

孙老师提示:

1. 充分重视三种基本句型的重要性，它们是学好英语的关键，也是学会用英文思维的第一步，真正掌握英语的三种句型，在以后的学习中有一通百通的效果。
2. 请特别注意英语中的介词，常用介词不过30多个，在阅读英文和说英文时你会发现，平均每读10个单词就会出现两个介词，所以介词有以一当百的效果，也就是说，背会30多个介词解决了阅读中的20%词汇。
3. 将中英两种文字加以比较，注意它们的相同与不同之处，掌握其规律，学习英语就变得异常容易。
4. 要想真正掌握好英语，只有正确的概念是不够的，应该结合一本好教材同时学习。国内现有的教材中，《新概念英语》是一本难得的好教材，当你学完本课之后，你可以读一下《新概念英语》第二册第一课，该课的重点就是强调词性和词序及三种基本句型。

本课要点

1. BE句型的基本结构——主+系动词+表。
2. BE句型中的词序与词性及其相应中文概念。
3. 定语的位置。
4. 介词短语做表语与做定语的区别。
5. BE句型的人称、单复数及肯定否定与疑问形式的变化。
6. 一定要要求学生熟背be句型在不同人称中的变化。
7. There be句型的基本结构——谓+主+状。
8. There be句型中的词序与词性及其相对于中文的概念。
9. 流利完成口头作业，为以后学习打下基础！
10. There be句型的单复数及其肯定否定与疑问形式的变化。
其实英语只有三种基本句型

导言

英语第三种句型主+谓+宾+状，它的旗帜是“do”即行为动词。当英国人举起“do”这面旗帜的时候，他们想表达什么人做什么。在该结构中主谓是不可缺少的部分，宾语有无取决于动词是及物动词还是不及物动词，状语根据需要而定。该句型在三个句型中使用频率最高，而且时态、语态变化也最为复杂，因此，扎实本句型的基本形式，对以后的学习至关重要，万不可掉以轻心。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词序</th>
<th>1 主语</th>
<th>2 谓语</th>
<th>3 宾语</th>
<th>4 状语</th>
<th>5 状语</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>含义</td>
<td>句子的主体</td>
<td>主语发出的动作</td>
<td>动作接受者</td>
<td>修饰动词</td>
<td>表示谓语动作发生的时间地点原因等</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>词性</td>
<td>名词代词</td>
<td>动词</td>
<td>名词代词（宾格）</td>
<td>副词</td>
<td>介词短语（介词+名词）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>介词短语（介词+名词）</td>
<td>名词代词</td>
<td>动词</td>
<td>名词代词（宾格）</td>
<td>副词</td>
<td>介词短语（介词+名词）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>名词</td>
<td>介词短语</td>
<td>副词</td>
<td>动词</td>
<td>名词</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*注：在该结构中主谓是不可缺少的部分，宾语有无取决于动词是及物还是不及物，状语根据需要而定。

孙老师提示：

英文中主+谓+宾句型与中文的表达方式完全一样，学生很容易掌握，只是在加上修饰动词的状语之后才有所不同，一定要提醒学生注意，英文是主+谓+宾+状，而中文是主+状+谓+宾。在该结构中主谓是不可缺少的部分，宾格有无取决于动词是及物还是不及物动词，状语根据需要而定。

1. 学生们在大学里努力学习英语。
   The students study English hard in the university.
孙老师提示：

在任何一种句型中，只要需要，名词都可以被定语修饰。以第2句为例。

形容词 介词短语 介词短语
The new students from China study English hard in the university in America.

孙老师提示：

形容词 介词短语 介词短语
The students study English hard in the school.

In the school, the students study English hard.

● The students study English hard for the test in the school every day.

For the test, the students study English hard in the school every day.

学生们为了考试在学校里每天努力地学习英语。

孙老师提示：

do句型时态的变化如口头作业所示。

口头作业

要求：

背诵下面的句子，注意句子的肯定、否定及疑问形式，做到时态不错，不结巴！

现在时
The students study English.
The students do not study English.
Do the students study English?

The student studies English.
The student does not study English.
Does the student study English?

Do句型过去时中的行为动词变化分为两类：规则变化与不规则变化。规则变化一般只要
孙老师提示:

规则动词与不规则动词的由来（详细讲解见二级第三课）。

实际语言应用中，不规则动词的使用频率非常高。希望老师家长督促学生牢记下例常用不规则动词，我们将在以后的课中为学生分类列表，以帮助学生记忆。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>现在式</th>
<th>过去式</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have (has)</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>现在式</th>
<th>过去式</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

课堂练习（1）

孙老师提示:

在做练习时，千万注意中国人易犯的下列错误。
1. 注意英语的三个句子，举什么旗子不要错，不要丢。
2. 注意三个句型的肯定、否定和疑问形式。
3. 注意冠词（the、a、an）。
4. 小心单数复数。
5. 注意定语、状语的位置。
6. 注意时态。

1. 汤姆每天晚上在阅览室（reading room）里做作业。
2. 二楼厕所的那个人是从英国来的吗？
3. 客厅里靠窗户的墙上的画里的那个小村庄（village）是你的家乡吗？
孙老师提示:
从下面高考原卷作文题可看出，掌握好三个基本句型在高中的重要性能，在这里我们只以该作文的开头为例如下:

第一节　书面表达（满分25分）2007全国卷　作文
假定你是李华。应英国朋友Bob的要求，写一封短信介绍你校图书馆的基本情况。内容须包括下面两幅图中的相关信息。

注意：1、词数100左右；
2、可以适当增减细节，以使行文连贯；
3、开头语已为你写好。
Dear Bob,

Thank you for your last letter asking about our library.

Our library is the center of the school. There is a beautiful garden in front of it and our classroom building is right (正好) behind it. The library is big.

Best wishes,
Li Hua

课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：

从下面高考原卷作文可看出，掌握好三个基本句型以及介词、连词在高中学习中的重要性，这里我们举例如下：

普通高等学校招生全国统一考试

我得知你要在9月份来。我已经为你找到一个地方，这是一个带有卧室，卫生间和厨房的25平米的公寓（flat）。卧室里有床，沙发，桌子和椅子。每月房租（rent）是500元。该公寓在芳草街的一个大楼里，这座大楼离新华中文学校不远，你可以乘公交车去学校，其实路程只是一站。不知你是否喜欢，如不，我可以再找。还需要什么帮助请告诉我。

孙老师提示：

从我历年面授的高三学生情况看，写作的失败在于基本功大差。请同学们有时间多看看前几课。万丈高楼平地起，千万不可乎视基础。任何复杂的文章都是从简单开始。我们在以后的教学中将带你逐渐的将历年的考卷都做一遍……。

本课要点

1、DO句型的基本结构——主 谓 宾 状
2、DO句型中的词序与词性及其相应中文概念。
3、DO句型中状语的位置。
4、三种基本句型在高考及各种考试中的重要作用。
当了解英文是由三种基本句型构成，识别它们的主要方法是动词后，掌握动词就成了学习的第二个难点。要想掌握好动词，主要有以下三点：

1. 无论动词如何变化，我们都能识别它，并且熟练地应用它，这就要求我们熟记每种变化的构成。

2. 它们的每种变化到底意味着什么？它们与中文的动词有什么区别？

3. 最关键是要了解什么是时态，其实时态的本质是一半时，一半态。

由于以上问题在我们以往的教科书中非常混乱，中国人和英国人的思维方式有很大不同，以上问题就变得非常复杂，在整个学习中要注意上面提出的三个问题，当你能够回答并掌握以上三点时，你的英语就会产生一个极大的飞跃。

本课重点是掌握四种时。这是学好时态的基础。

孙老师提示：

首先让我们从“时”入手，掌握英文中的时间概念并不难，请看下列时间轴。

一般时态所表示的时间概念

过去 —— 现在 —— 将来

过去将来

（即相对于过去的将来）

从上面可以看出一般时态所使用的时间概念。

△ 一般时态的构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
<th>主系表</th>
<th>主谓宾</th>
<th>谓主状</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>一般现在时态</td>
<td>is, am, are</td>
<td>do, does</td>
<td>there is (are)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一般过去时态</td>
<td>was, were</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>there was (were)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一般将来时态</td>
<td>will be</td>
<td>will do</td>
<td>there will be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>一般过去将来时态</td>
<td>would be</td>
<td>would do</td>
<td>there would be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
be句型一般时态的构成

Be
- is
- am
- are
- was
- were
- will be
- would be

There be一般时态的构成

there (be)
- is
- are
- was
- were
- will be
- would be

Do句型一般现在时态的构成

Do
The students study English.
The students do not study English.
Do the students study English?

Does
The student studies English.
The student does not study English.
Does the student study English?

Do句型一般过去时态的构成

Did
The students studied English.
The students did not study English.
Did the students study English?

Do句型一般将来时态的构成

Will
The students will study English.
The students will not study English.
Will the students study English?

Do句型一般过去将来时态的构成

Would
The students would study English.
The students would not study English.
Would the students study English?
LESSON THREE
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

一般时的基本用法

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

▲ 一般现在时态的基本用法

1. 表示客观事实或普遍真理

- The earth moves around the sun.
  地球围绕太阳运行。
- Practice makes perfect.
  熟能生巧。

2. 表示目前的情况及反复发生的动作，或习惯性的动作，常与频率副词连用。如 sometimes, often, always, usually, seldom, 这种副词通常放在主语和动词之间。

- She seldom gets up before 6 in the morning.
  她早晨很少在6点以前起床。
- They often go for an outing on Sunday.
  星期天他们经常去郊游。

▲ 一般过去时态的基本用法

一般过去时态表示过去的状态及发生的动作。

- I went to see a doctor yesterday.
  昨天我去看病了。
- He was a pilot five years ago.
  五年前他是一个飞行员。
- He married a stewardess.
  他娶了个乘务员。

▲ 一般将来时态的基本用法

在英语中，表示将来的动作或状态时，有多种形式。这里介绍四种常用形式。

1. will, shall

  shall用于第一人称，will用于其它人称。
  在现代英语中，尤其在美国，在表示将来的时候，所有人称都使用will，而shall只用于一些习惯用法。

- She will arrive in London on Friday.
  她将在星期五到伦敦。
- We will never forget you forever.
  我将永远不会忘记你。
- He often says he will be rich in the future.
  他常说他将来会富有。

14
2. to be (am, are, is) going to do (be)

该种形式用来表示将来时，尤其是在口语中用的较多，常常含有“打算”的含义。

- I am going to get up at five o’clock tomorrow morning.
  我明天早上打算五点起床。
- I’m going to have dinner at home this evening.
  今天晚上我打算在家吃晚饭。

shall, will 和 to be going to 的比较

- He is going to see his teacher this afternoon.
- He will see his teacher this afternoon.
  第一句只是一种打算，第二句在一定程度上已经决定了。
- I’m going to climb to the top.
- I will climb to the top.

孙老师提示:

第一句表达的是一种意向，第二句肯定程度比较大。

will 和 to be going to 的区别有时并不十分明显，可以换用，但在有些情况下却不可以。

- I will never forget you.
- × I’m not going to forget you.

孙老师提示:

第二句不对。这里表示的不是一种打算而是一种不可能、决不会的意思。

3. be (is, am, are) to + 动词原形

也是一种表示将来的方式，含有“计划”或“安排好了”的意思，是正式用语。

- Mary and my brother are to be married next year.
  玛丽和我的兄弟计划明年结婚。

be to + 动词原形与 to be going to + 动词原形的比较

- We are going to finish our paper in the end of this month.
  我们打算本月底完成我们的论文。
- We are to finish our paper in the end of this month.
  我们计划本月底完成我们的论文。

第一句 to be going to do 是表示打算。
第二句是计划，安排好了或必须完成的意思。
4. be (is, am, are) about to + 动词原形

指马上就要发生的动作。

- Look! The plane is about to take off.
  看！飞机马上就要起飞了。

▲ 一般过去将来时态的基本用法

过去将来时态实际上是过去时态与将来时态相加构成的时间概念。在英语中表示过去将来状态或动作时有多种形式。这里介绍四种常用形式。

1. would, should

should用于第一人称，would用于其他人称。
在现代英语中，尤其在美国，所有人称都用would。

- I thought he would take the chance.
  我想他会抓住这个机会。
  （相对于thought这个过去时态的将来）
- I knew he would be a good teacher.
  我早知他会成为一个好老师。
  （相对于knew这个过去时态的将来）
- Last evening he said he would go to America.
  昨天晚上他说他要去美国。
  （相对于昨天晚上的将来）

孙老师提示：

从上面的三个例句可以看出：一般过去将来时态在使用时通常会给出一个过去的时间点。should和would除表示过去将来以外，还可以作为情态动词用。用法比较复杂，请同学们在今后的阅读中多加注意。

- Should I go on?
  我可以继续吗？
  （表示征求对方的同意，语气很客气）
- You should give up smoking.
  你应该戒烟。
  （表示应该，指一种义务或责任，但语气较客气）
- Would you like to have dinner with me?
  你愿意和我共进晚餐吗？
  （表示请求对方做某事，语气很客气）
2. **to be (was / were) going to**

   这种一般过去将来时态和我们上面讲的一般将来的用法是一样的。只是立足于过去某一点谈将来的事情。

3. **to be (was were) to +动词原形**

   （用法可参考一般将来进行时态）

4. **be (was were) about to +动词原形**

   （用法可参考一般将来进行时态）

   • *I am about to -- or *I am going to -- die: either expression is correct.*

   ——Dominique Bouhours, French grammarian, D.

   我将或者我即将——死去：两种表达方式都正确。

   ——法国语法学家 伯阿沃斯 . D. （遗言）

   • *Oh, do not cry -- be good children and we will all meet in heaven.*

   哦，不要哭，要做乖孩子，我们都会在天堂见面的。

   ——美国总统 杰克逊 . A. （遗言）

特殊疑问句的构成

特殊疑问句是对句子中不了解的成分提问，其基本规律是：

1. 提问主语，句子不变。
2. 提问句子的其他成分，先变一般疑问句，再用疑问代词或疑问副词代替所不知道的成分，并置于句首。
3. 提问主语的定语，按主语处理，提问其他成分的定语，按其它成分处理。

   • *He studied English hard in the university for the test on Sunday.*

   ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓

   who what how where why when

   他在大学里，为了考试在星期日努力学习英语。

1. *Who studied English hard in the university for the test on Sunday?*
2. *What did he study hard in the university for the test on Sunday?*
3. *How did he study English in the university for the test on Sunday?*
4. *Where did he study English hard for the test on Sunday?*
5. *Why did he study English hard in the university on Sunday?*
6. *When did he study English hard in the university for the test?*

   注：当谓语动词不知道的时候，宾语自然也不知道。

7. *What did he do hard in the university for the test on Sunday?*

   注：特别注意提问定语的句型变化。
8. Five students study English.
   How many students study English?

9. I have two children.
   How many children do you have?

10. Tom is our teacher.
    Who is your teacher?

11. I live in America.
    Where do you live?

注：在谓主状句型中，无论提问什么成分，都要先把句型变成一般疑问句。

12. There is a book on the desk.
    ① What is there on the desk?
    ②

    孙老师提示：
    请注意以下两种提问方式更符合英美人的语言习惯。
    Is there anything on the desk?
    Is there anybody in the classroom?

13. There are five people in my family.
    How many people are there in your family?

    孙老师提示：
    请同学们一定要认真做作业，动手能力和举一反三的能力，是衡量一个人素质的重要因素，也是掌握好英语的关键。

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com ）

把下列句子先变成一般疑问句，再就画线部分提问。
1. John taught in a middle school.
2. Tom studies Chinese.
3. The meeting will begin at two o’clock.
4. She was happy because she passed the exam.
5. They were neighbors three years ago.
6. We went to the cinema twice a month.
7. He can finish the job in two weeks.
8. We sold the cotton by weight.

本课要点
1. 复习巩固三个基本句型。
2. 熟背三个基本句型各种人称的肯定、否定、疑问形式。
3. 熟背四种一般时的构成。
4. 熟记四种一般时的含意，特别注意几种将来时之间的区别。
导言

我们前面所学的四种时态，表达的只是时间概念。本课所学的进行时态除时间概念外，又加入了某种感情色彩。在传统的教学中，进行时态往往被认为是表示一个进行的动作，其实这只是一个表面现象，进行时态更多的含义在于给人一种生动的画面感。我们可以形象地比喻：使用一般时态像听录音机，使用进行时态则像看电视机，而后者所具备的功能正是给人以画面感，这恰恰是一般态和进行态的不同之处。此外，进行时态给我们的是一种暂时性的概念。理解以上两点是非常重要的。

孙老师提示:

从下表中不难看出，进行时态不是一种时间概念，而是一种情态。任何一种时间与进行态结合都能构成进行时态，也就是说进行时态是在四种时间概念中加进行态构成的。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时 态</th>
<th>一般</th>
<th>进行</th>
<th>完成</th>
<th>完成进行</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现 在</td>
<td>一般现在时</td>
<td>现在进行时</td>
<td>现在完成时</td>
<td>现在完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过 去</td>
<td>一般过去时</td>
<td>过去进行时</td>
<td>过去完成时</td>
<td>过去完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将 来</td>
<td>一般将来时</td>
<td>将来进行时</td>
<td>将来完成时</td>
<td>将来完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来</td>
<td>一般过去将来时</td>
<td>过去将来进行时</td>
<td>过去将来完成时</td>
<td>过去将来完成进行时</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

进行时态的构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时 态</th>
<th>主谓宾</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在进行时</td>
<td>is (am, are) doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去进行时</td>
<td>was (were) doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来进行时</td>
<td>will be doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来进行时</td>
<td>would be doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

口头作业

要求：
背诵下面句子的肯定、否定及疑问句，做到不结巴！
LESSON FOUR
孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语
www.teachersun.com

孙老师特别提示:
请同学们务必将时态的构成表背得滚瓜烂熟，这是英语基础的基础，万万不可轻视，此处一乱，整个英语体系全乱！

You are studying English.
You are not studying English.
Are you studying English?

You were studying English.
You were not studying English.
Were you studying English?

You will be studying English.
You will not be studying English.
Will you be studying English?

1、进行态的暂时性，进行时态与一般时态的比较

▲ 现在进行时态和过去进行时态

过去       ———— 现在       ———— 将来

现在进行时

（即相对于过去的将来）

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
从上图不难看出，进行时态表示一个较短的时间段里持续的动作，而一般时则表示在较长的时间段里持续或反复发生的动作。

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
下面第二句给我们的感觉是他们一直住在别的什么地方，但目前暂住美国。
● They live in America.（一贯的）
● They are living in America.（暂时的）

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
下面的句子人们往往理解成他正在努力学英语。此种理解并无错误，但在不同的情景中又可理解成他现在学英语很努力，言外之意是他过去并不努力，他进步了。
He is studying English hard.

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
第一句是说你一贯吃的不多。
第二句则表示你目前吃的不多，言外之意是你一贯吃的很多。
孙老师提示:

第二句给人的印象是：电视过去工作不正常，最近修了一下，效果很好。

Do you know your girl friend was having dinner with a guy (家伙) in the restaurant near our school yesterday evening?

你知道不知道你的女朋友昨天晚上和一个小伙子在学校附近的餐馆一起吃饭吗？

孙老师提示:

说话的人没有用一般过去时，而是用过去进行时态。从这句话中可以看出他通过进行时态的画面感，给对方一个亲眼看到的感觉，以刺激听话的人。

At midnight yesterday, I was walking by the room, I heard someone sharpening a knife in it. After a while, a woman was crying in it, I rushed in, but there was nobody.

上面是一个虚构的吓人故事。他使用了过去进行时态，目的在于给人一种画面感，以达到恐怖的目的。如果用一般过去时态，故事会平淡得多。

3、进行时态与一般时态的比较

- I will wait for you at the airport.
  I will be waiting for you at the airport.

第一句用的是一般将来时态，第二句用的是将来进行时态。第二句给人的感觉好像能够看到说话的人将在机场等待的情景，所以更亲切、更踏实。这就是画面感的效果。我们很难用汉语表达出上面两句话的不同。
LESSON FOUR

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

- We will live happily together in this large flat（一套公寓）.
  We will be living happily together in this large flat.

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

该例句的情景是一个男子带着未婚妻去看新房。如果只用一般将来时态，语言就较平淡。使用第二句将来进行时态，便可以给自己的未婚妻展现一种活生生的未来生活的美好前景。这就是进行时态的妙处所在。我们同样很难用汉语译出上面两句英文中的不同时态，这也是汉语在时态表达上的局限。

孙老师提示：（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

注意下面是新概念第二册第一课的原文，作者为了表达对一男一女大声说话的反感，使用了下面的句子：A young man and a young woman were sitting behind me. They were talking loudly. 句子使用的是过去进行时态，目的在于加强语气，让读者感觉到那一男一女好像就坐在我们面前，没完没了旁若无人地在电影院里高谈阔论，以引起读者对他们的反感。

Last week I went to the theatre. I had a very good seat. The play was very interesting. I did not enjoy it. A young man and a young woman were sitting behind me. They were talking loudly. I got very angry. I could not hear the actors. I turned round. I looked at the man and the woman angrily. They did not pay any attention. In the end, I could not bear it. I turned round again. "I can't hear a word!" I said angrily.

4. 非持续性动词的进行时态形式表示将来时态。

1. His father is dying.
   他的父亲要死了。

2. The spring is coming.
   春天要来了。

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：

我们发现大多数同学在自己做练习中会出现大量的问题，这些问题将会直接影响到您的高考成绩。希望同学们花一点时间进行练习，在练习完毕之后，我们会认真分析你练习中的错误。如果你想在高考拿高分，孙老师提示——请务必按照我们的要求扎实基础，千万！！！

练习说明

时态是一种非常灵活的语言现象。我们汉语中在时间上的表达方式与英文完全不同。英文的时态不仅仅是一种时间概念，它还带有不同的情态。所以，在做练习时，并不是简单对和错的问题，而是哪个性态更好。必须同时注意“时”与“态”两个方面，结合上下文及情景，细心体会，方能真正掌握。
时态选择。（该题全部取自于高考原卷）
1. The last time I ____ Jane, she ____ cotton in the fields.
   A. had seen; was picking       B. saw; picked
   C. had seen; picked            D. saw; was picking
2. We were all surprised when he made it clear that he ____ office soon.
   A. leaves                     B. would leave
   C. left                       D. had left
3. --Can I join the club, Dad?
   --You can when you ____ a bit older.
   A. get                        B. will get
   C. are getting                D. will have got
4. --Do you like the material?
   --Yes, it ____ very soft.
   A. is feeling                 B. felt
   C. feels                      D. is felt
5. I don’t really work here; I ____ until the new secretary arrives.
   A. just help out              B. have just helped out
   C. am just helping out        D. will just help out
6. --Your phone number again? I ____ quite catch it.
   --It’s 9568442.
   A. didn’t                     B. couldn’t
   C. don’t                      D. can’t
7. I don’t think Jim saw me; he ____ into space.
   A. just stared                B. was just staring
   C. has just stared            D. had just stared
8. --Can I help you, sir?
   --Yes. I bought this radio here yesterday, but it ____.
   A. didn’t work                B. won’t work
   C. can’t work                 D. isn’t working
9. I first met Lisa three years ago. She ____ at a radio shop at the time.
   A. has worked                 B. was working
   C. had been working           D. had worked
10. --Alice, why didn’t you come yesterday?
    --I ____, but I had an unexpected visitor.
       A. had                     B. would
       C. was going to             D. did
11. --Is this raincoat yours?
    --No, mine ____ there behind the door.
       A. is hanging               B. has hung
       C. hangs                    D. hung

本课要点
1、学好时态的关键是要了解时态是“时与态”的组合，竖行的四种进行态，其“态”的概念是一样的，只要掌握一种，四种全会。
2、掌握进行态的关键，在于它表示的是一个暂时性的动作和给人以生动的画面感，不可一律都用“正在”来套，有时两种语言是很难相互直译的，如果希望用一个“正在”来表示进行，往往将自己逼入误区。
3、在今后的阅读和听外国人讲话时，多注意他们是怎样使用时态的，多问为什么，对初学者，最好背下几篇含有进行态的好文章，比如上课提到的“新概念英语”第二册第一课、第七课、第十三课，并细心体会各种时态的应用。这样经过一段时间的学习，在时态应用上就会达到炉火纯青的程度。
4、我们在以后的课中也为同学们准备了大量练习，希望同学们用“心”来做。
LESSON FIVE

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

LESSON FIVE

三个句型复习与宾语从句

导言

英语中的从句其实就是三个句型的衍生物。掌握了三个句型就已经掌握了宾语从句。宾语从句并不难，只是将我们过去学过的主谓宾句型中的宾语变成一个完整的句子而已，也就是说一个大句里套了一个小句子而已。

孙老师特别提示：

本练习为课堂练习，请在听完基础课第四课之后再听该练习，尤其是基础较差的同学。做完练习后再继续听讲。我们发现在大多数同学在自己做练习中会出现大量的问题，这些问题将会直接影响到你的高考成绩。希望你们花一点时间进行练习，在练习完毕之后，我们会认真分析你练习中的错误。如果你想在高考中拿高分，孙老师提示——请务必按照我们的要求扎实基础，千万！！！

请同学们千万背下下列不规则动词表

孙老师特别提示：

请同学们在课后务必把中学课本要求你们记住的不规则动词的现在时、过去时、过去分词牢牢记住，否则会直接影响到你时态的掌握以及被动语态的学习，而且会导致你在高考里丢分——孙老师是最不主张死记硬背的，此处是必须要死记硬背的，我已尽量将其按规律分类，以帮助大家记忆。也请家长督促并检查您的孩子是否牢记已学的不规则动词的三种形式。千万注意！！！

英语常用不规则动词分类表

1、A--A--A型（现在式、过去式和过去分词同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>花费</td>
<td>[kɔst]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>割，切</td>
<td>[kʌt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>打</td>
<td>[hit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>让</td>
<td>[let]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>放下</td>
<td>[pʊt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>读</td>
<td>[ri:d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>伤</td>
<td>[hɜ:t]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2、A--A--B型（现在式和过去式同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td>打</td>
<td>[bi:t] [ˈbi:tn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. A--B--A型（现在式和过去分词同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>[kʌm] [kəm] [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>变</td>
<td>[bɪˈkʌm] [bɪˈkəm] [bɪˈkʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>跑</td>
<td>[rʌn] [ræn] [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. A--B--B型

（1）在动词原形后加一个辅音字母“d”或“t”构成过去式或过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>[kʌm] [kəm] [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>变</td>
<td>[bɪˈkʌm] [bɪˈkəm] [bɪˈkʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>跑</td>
<td>[rʌn] [ræn] [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（2）把动词原形的最后一个辅音字母“d”改为“t”构成过去式或过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>[kʌm] [kəm] [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>变</td>
<td>[bɪˈkʌm] [bɪˈkəm] [bɪˈkʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>跑</td>
<td>[rʌn] [ræn] [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（3）其他

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>[kʌm] [kəm] [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>变</td>
<td>[bɪˈkʌm] [bɪˈkəm] [bɪˈkʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>跑</td>
<td>[rʌn] [ræn] [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（接下表）
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>教</td>
<td>[tiːt] / [tɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>战斗</td>
<td>[fait] / [fɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>睡</td>
<td>[sli:p] / [slept]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>保持</td>
<td>[ki:p] / [kept]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>扫</td>
<td>[swi:p] / [swept]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>站</td>
<td>[stænd] / [stud]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>明白</td>
<td>[ʌndəˈstænd] / [ʌndəˈstʊd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>得胜</td>
<td>[win] / [wʌn, wəʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone/shined</td>
<td>shone/shined</td>
<td>发光</td>
<td>[ʃain] / [ʃəʊn] / [ʃain]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>觉得</td>
<td>[fi:l] / [felt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>发现</td>
<td>[faind] / [faund]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>得到</td>
<td>[get] / [got]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>有</td>
<td>[hæv] / [hæd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>盛，握</td>
<td>[haʊld] / [held]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>离开</td>
<td>[li:v] / [left]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>制造</td>
<td>[meɪk] / [merd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>遇见</td>
<td>[mi:t] / [met]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>卖</td>
<td>[sel] / [səʊld]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>射击</td>
<td>[ʃu:t] / [ʃot]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>告诉</td>
<td>[tel] / [təʊld]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelt/smelled</td>
<td>smelt/smelled</td>
<td>嗅，闻</td>
<td>[smel] / [smelt] / [smeld]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>坐</td>
<td>[sæt] / [sæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>挖</td>
<td>[dɪɡ] / [dʌɡ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. **A—B—C型**（现在式、过去式和过去分词都不相同）
（1）在动词原形后加“-n”或“-en”构成过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td>[i:t] / [et] / [i:tn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（接下表）
## LESSON FIVE

### 动词原形（现在式）
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>落下</td>
<td>[fo:l] [fɛl] ['fɔ:ln]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
<td>偷</td>
<td>[sti:l] [stəul] ['stəulan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>给</td>
<td>[gɪv] [gɛv] ['gɪvn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
<td>冻结</td>
<td>[fri:z] [fraʊz] ['fraʊzn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td>拿</td>
<td>[teɪk] [tʊk] ['teɪkən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>看见</td>
<td>[si:] [sɔ:] [si:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>写</td>
<td>[rət] [rət] ['rətn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
<td>骑</td>
<td>[raʊd] [rəud] ['rədn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>驾驶</td>
<td>[draɪv] [draʊv] ['draʊvn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
<td>抛，扔</td>
<td>[θrəʊ] [θru:] [θrəʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
<td>吹</td>
<td>[blaʊ] [blu:] [blaʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>生长</td>
<td>[grəʊ] [gru:] ['grəʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>知道</td>
<td>[nəʊ] [nju:] [nəʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>飞</td>
<td>[flaɪ] [flu:] [fləʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>拉，绘画</td>
<td>[drɔ:] [dru:] [drɔ:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
<td>展示</td>
<td>[ʃəʊ] [ʃəud] [ʃəʊn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) 过去式加“-n”或“-en”构成过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>说话</td>
<td>[spi:k] [spəʊk] ['spəʊkən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>破碎,折断</td>
<td>[brekt] [braʊk] ['braʊken]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>waked/ woke</td>
<td>waked/ waken</td>
<td>醒</td>
<td>[weɪk] [weɪkt] [wəʊk] ['weɪkən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>选择</td>
<td>[tʃu:z] [tʃəʊz] ['tʃəʊzn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>忘记</td>
<td>[feə'get] [feə'gɔt] [feə'gɔtn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) 变单词在重读音节中的元音字母“i”分别为“a”（过去式）和“u”（过去分词）。
### LESSON FIVE

孙老师课堂 · 三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

（接上表）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sunk</td>
<td>沉</td>
<td>[sɪŋk] [sæŋk] [sʌŋk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
<td>游泳</td>
<td>[swɪm] [swæm] [swəm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>饮</td>
<td>[drɪŋk] [dræŋk] [drʌŋk]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(4) 其他不规则动词的变化。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be (am、is、are)</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>是</td>
<td>[bi] [ˌeɪ'm] [ɪz] [wɜ:(r)] [bɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>做</td>
<td>[du:] [dɪd] [dʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>去</td>
<td>[ɡəʊ] [wɜnt] [ɡən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
<td>躺</td>
<td>[laɪ] [leɪ] [leɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>下蛋,放置</td>
<td>[leɪ] [lɛd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td>穿</td>
<td>[weə(r)] [wɔ:, wəʊr] [wɔ:n]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 口头作业

要求：

任意变化三个句型的代词，做到肯定、否定、疑问及时态不错，不结巴！

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Be</th>
<th>there be</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**主系表**

现在： You are rich.
过去： You were rich.
将来： You will be rich.
过去将来： You would be rich.

1. 孙老师昨天说他会有钱的。

   Yesterday, Teacher Sun said that he would be rich.

**There be**

现在： There is a book on the table.
过去： There was a book on the table.
将来： There will be a book on the table.
过去将来： There would be a book on the table.

**主谓宾状**

现在： You study English in the school.
过去： You studied English in the school.
将来:  
You will study English in the school.  
You are going to study English.  
You are to study English.  
You are about to study English.

过去将来:  
You would study English in the school.  
You were going to study English.  
You were to study English.  
You were about to study English.

进行:  
You are studying English.  
You were studying English.  
You will be studying English.  
You would be studying English.

孙老师提示:  
宾语从句就是将以前学的主谓宾句型的宾语变成一个完整句子，从句前加上一个连词that，明白这一点，宾语从句就变得非常简单。

主  谓  宾  
I know the teacher.  
我知道这个老师。

主  谓  宾语从句  
I know that he is rich.  
我知道他有钱。

主  谓  宾语从句  
I know that there is a book on the desk.  
我知道桌子上有一本书。

主  谓  宾语从句  
I know that he studies English hard.  
我知道他努力地学英语。

I know that there was a book on the desk yesterday.  
我知道昨天桌子上有一本书。

孙老师提示:  
从上面的句子可以看出，宾语从句只是将宾语扩大成一个句子，并用连词that引导，并没有改变三个基本句型的结构。因为that没有实际意思，在上下文明确时，通常可以省略。
孙老师提示:

从上面的句子可以看出，主句与从句的动词时态可根据需要用不同的时态。

中国人学习英语最容易犯的错误
1、举什么旗子。
2、注意时态。
3、肯定 否定 疑问。
4、定语的位置。
5、单数、复数
6、连词、介词
7、冠词

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）
1. 孙老师经常说他会有钱的。
2. 我妈妈昨天告诉我，我爸爸要去美国。
3. 你知道昨天你们教室里有五个钱包吗？
4. 你相信你们班长明年会成为你们班最好的学生吗？
5. 我妈妈希望明年我们能买一个大房子。
6. 你知道昨天那个从美国来的老师在学校里把那个从英国来的老师给杀了吗？

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）
1. 你知道你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天尿床（wet the bed）了吗？
2. 从美国来的那个老师昨天告诉我他不回美国了。
3. 你相信你们班的老师明天打算在王府井大街书店买一千本书吗？
4. 你认为昨天谁吃了我的包子？
5. 你相信十年前你们班长曾经游泳横渡黄河吗？
6. 我认为孙老师过去是最好的老师，现在是最好的老师，将来也一定是最好的老师。
7. 昨天你们班的老师告诉我，他打算娶你们班长的妹妹。
8. 我不知道我父亲明年是否会去美国。
I don’t know that he studies English hard.
I don’t know if he studies English hard.
I don’t know whether he studies English hard or not.
I don’t know if he will be our teacher.
I don’t know who studies English.
I don’t know what you study.
I don’t know whose sister studies English.
I don’t know whose sister you love.
I don’t know how much money he has.
I don’t know how many daughters he has.

句子完整：that
是否：if  whether… or not
东西：what
谁：who whom
谁的：whose
多少：how many how much
为什么：why
怎么：how
在哪：where
什么时间：when

课堂练习（3）

1. 你知道你们班的那个很帅的男孩有多少个女朋友吗？
2. 你相信我们学校明年会有200个老师吗？
3. 你认为明年我们学校会有多少位从美国来的老师？

本课要点

在学习宾语从句时，有几点必须向学生反复强调。

1. 宾语从句不过是将宾语变成一个完整的句子，三个基本句型重新排列而已。
2. 英国人思维方式的根本是——什么重要什么放在前面。因此，无论用什么连词，该连词一定要放在从句的句首，如该连词是做定语，要连同所修饰的名词一起放在从句句首。
3. 宾语从句的词序是陈述句词序，决不能用疑问句的词序。如需提问，应将主句变化成疑问句，而不是从句！
4. 牢记宾语从句的连词。
LESSON SIX

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

基本句型复习

尽管在本课程一开始，我就反复强调基础的重要性，但在练习和做高考作文原卷的过程中，仍发现学生的大量错误全部来自于基本句型的混乱与基础的不扎实。我不得不带领大家重新扎实基础。万不可再忽视基础！切记！切记！

孙老师特别提示：
本练习为课堂练习，请在听完课之后再练习，尤其是基础较差的同学。我们发现大多数同学在自己做练习中会出现大量的问题，这些问题将会直接影响到高考成绩。在练习完毕之后，我们会认真分析你练习中的错误。如果你想在高考拿高分，孙老师提示——请务必按照我们的要求扎实基础，千万！

牢记三个基本句型

**Be**
- 现在: You are rich.
- 过去: You were rich.
- 将来: You will be rich.
- 过去将来: You would be rich.

**there be**
- 现在: There is a book on the table.
- 过去: There was a book on the table.
- 将来: There will be a book on the table.
- 过去将来: There would be a book on the table.

**do**

课堂口头练习

孙老师特别提示：
请同学们务必一口气熟背下列基本句型，正确的语感、流利的口语以及听力的提高就是从这里开始！千万！千万！

**主系表**
- 现在: You study English in the school.
- 过去: You studied English in the school.
- 将来: You will study English in the school.
- 你正要: You are going to study English.
- 你将要: You are to study English.
- 你正要: You are about to study English.
过去将来：
You would study English in the school.
You were going to study English.
You were to study English.
You were about to study English.

进行：
You are studying English.
You were studying English.
You will be studying English.
You would be studying English.

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

中国人学习英语最容易犯的错误
1、举什么旗子。
2、注意时态。
3、肯定 否定 疑问。
4、定语的位置。
5、单数、复数
6、连词、介词
7、冠词

1、去年北京有一万辆汽车。
2、去年北京市有多少辆汽车？
3、你知道去年北京市有多少汽车吗？
4、明天你们班长打算在书店买多少本书？
5、你知道明天你们班长打算在书店买多少本书吗？
6、昨天晚上8点钟你爸爸和你妈妈在客厅里做什么呢？
7、你知道昨天晚上8点钟你爸爸和你妈妈在客厅里做什么吗？
8、明年你们学校的图书馆（library）里有多少本书？
9、你知道明年你们学校的图书馆（library）里有多少本书吗？
10、谁是你们班最胖的女生？
11、你知道谁是你们班最胖的女生吗？
12、谁是你们学校最漂亮的女生？
13、你知道谁是你们学校最漂亮的女生吗？
14、昨天你们班长为什么偷你们老师的钱包？
15、你知道昨天你们班长为什么偷你们老师的钱包吗？
16、昨天你爸爸买了些什么？
17. 你知道昨天你爸爸买了些什么吗?
18. 太阳为什么比地球大?
19. 你知道太阳为什么比地球大吗?
20. 为什么你妈比你爸吃的多?
21. 你知道为什么你妈比你爸吃的多吗?
22. 你姐姐明年打算在哪学英语?
23. 你知道你姐姐明年打算在哪学英语吗?

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示:

请同学们一定要认真做作业，动手能力和举一反三的能力是衡量一个人素质的重要因素，也是掌握好英语的关键。本练习可能会重复以前的练习，目的在于检查同学是否真正掌握，并能改正以前的错误。

1. 你知道你们老师的爸爸昨天为什么要打（beat）他？
2. 你知道你们班的哪个女孩子怎样成为你们班最好的学生吗？
3. 你知道昨天他们家的狗为什么咬（bit, bite）你吗？
4. 我妈妈昨天问我我打算在哪学英语。
5. 你知道你们学校的图书馆去年有多少图书吗？
6. 你知道他的父亲什么时候死的吗？
7. 你知道老鼠（mouse）为什么爱大米吗？
8. 你知道你们老师明年打算写多少本书吗？
9. 你知道你们老师现在在哪吃午饭的吗？
10. 你知道昨天晚上7点半你爸爸和你妈妈在客厅里做什么呢？
11. 那个医生告诉我他临时在这个医院帮忙。

本课要点

1. 勿必熟背本课口头练习，这是学好英语最重要的，否则很难学好，也不可能在考试中拿到高分，切记！切记！！！
2. 认真完成本课汉译英练习，注意三种基本句型在特殊疑问句与宾语从句中的变化（宾语从句在以后课中还会有专题讲解及练习）。认真听讲评，找出自己错误的原因，总结经验教训。
动词的基本模式

导言

前面我们学习了三种基本句型，其中“主+谓+宾+状”的使用最为频繁。在这个句型中，谓语动词的用法最为复杂，除了有时态、语态以外，还有短语动词、及物动词、不及物动词，可以带双宾语的动词及可以宾语补语的动词，而这些用法多是一些习惯。每一个动词后面跟什么样的宾语或补语都是固定搭配，在今后的学习中，对动词的习惯用法要特别注意，一个一个地牢记。

及物动词与不及物动词

孙老师提示：

及物动词是指在动词后可以直接跟宾语的动词。

主语+动词（Vt.）+宾语

●  An onion will not produce a rose. 及物动词

洋葱上长不出玫瑰。

不及物动词是指不能接宾语或不能直接跟宾语的动词。

主语+动词（Vi.）或 主语+动词（Vi.）+介词+宾语

●  The baby is sleeping. 不及物动词

孩子正在睡觉。

●  They listen to the English broadcast every day. 不及物动词

他们每天都听英语广播。Listen是不及物动词，通过介词to带宾语。

孙老师提示：

这样的词英语中很多，如take care of、look after、look for、depend on…这些词最好把它们当作一个及物的动词组来记。

有些动词既可当及物动词又可当不及物动词。

●  The servant led the visitors out. 及物动词

仆人把客人领出去。

●  All roads lead to Rome. 不及物动词

条条道路通罗马。
孙老师提示：

双宾语是指在一个动词后面可以带两个宾语。我们通常把代表人的宾语叫做间接宾语，物叫做直接宾语。可以带双宾语的动词有：give, send, bring, teach, show, tell, sing, make, read, sell等。

带双宾语的动词

主语+动词+间接宾语（人）+直接宾语（物）

He teaches us English. 间接宾语 直接宾语

主语+动词+直接宾语（物）+to(for)间接宾语（人）

He teaches English to us.

双宾语是指在一个动词后面可以带两个宾语。我们通常把代表人的宾语叫做间接宾语，物叫做直接宾语。可以带双宾语的动词有：give, send, bring, teach, show, tell, sing, make, read, sell等。

带双宾语的动词

主语+动词+间接宾语（人）+直接宾语（物）

He teaches us English. 间接宾语 直接宾语

主语+动词+直接宾语（物）+to(for)间接宾语（人）

He teaches English to us.

双宾语是指在一个动词后面可以带两个宾语。我们通常把代表人的宾语叫做间接宾语，物叫做直接宾语。可以带双宾语的动词有：give, send, bring, teach, show, tell, sing, make, read, sell等。

带双宾语的动词

主语+动词+间接宾语（人）+直接宾语（物）

He teaches us English. 间接宾语 直接宾语

主语+动词+直接宾语（物）+to(for)间接宾语（人）

He teaches English to us.

双宾语是指在一个动词后面可以带两个宾语。我们通常把代表人的宾语叫做间接宾语，物叫做直接宾语。可以带双宾语的动词有：give, send, bring, teach, show, tell, sing, make, read, sell等。

带双宾语的动词

主语+动词+间接宾语（人）+直接宾语（物）

He teaches us English. 间接宾语 直接宾语

主语+动词+直接宾语（物）+to(for)间接宾语（人）

He teaches English to us.

双宾语是指在一个动词后面可以带两个宾语。我们通常把代表人的宾语叫做间接宾语，物叫做直接宾语。可以带双宾语的动词有：give, send, bring, teach, show, tell, sing, make, read, sell等。

带双宾语的动词

主语+动词+间接宾语（人）+直接宾语（物）

He teaches us English. 间接宾语 直接宾语

主语+动词+直接宾语（物）+to(for)间接宾语（人）

He teaches English to us.
孙老师提示:
这类动词很多，各有自己的不同搭配，必须在学习和阅读时逐个记忆。例如:

inform sb. of sth. 通知某人某事

We must inform the passengers of the departure time as soon as possible.
我们必须尽快通知旅客起飞时间。

Regard sb. as sth. 认为某人是什么

I never regard myself as an expert.
我从来不认为我自己是专家。

Supply sb. with sth. 向某人提供某物

They supply the market with new commodities.
他们给市场提供新商品。

孙老师提示:
英语动词除时态语态以外，还有几种常用的模式，即及物与不及物动词、动词词组、双宾语和宾语补语。除动词词组需死记以外，其他模式与汉语用法基本相同。所以它们并不是我们学习的难点。

阅读与欣赏
注意动词的用法

Histories make men wise; poems wit (灵秀); the mathematics subtl (周密); natural philosophy deep; moral (伦理) grave (庄重); logic and rhetoric (修辞) able to contend (善辩)。

历史使人明智；诗词使人灵秀；数学使人周密；自然哲学使人深刻；伦理使人庄重；逻辑修辞学使人善辩。
I have made this letter longer than usual, only because I have not had the time to make it shorter.

### 课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

分析下列句子语法成分，并译成汉语，注意动词的用法。

1. *Empty vessels（容器） make the greatest sound.*
2. *Make money your servant（仆人）, not your master.*
3. *Women and wine, game（赌博） and deceit（欺骗）, make the wealth（财富） small.*
4. A Singapore airline invests（投资） $63 million or 59% of its budget（预算） in cabin service（客舱服务）.
5. Each ticket shows the passenger the departure date and time, fare, and flight number, etc.
6. The sun gives us a strong light, but the moon gives us only a faint light.
7. Boeing 747 is considered as the largest airplane in the civil air transportation.
8. The terrorists（恐怖主义） on the airplane are holding many passengers hostage（人质）.

### 课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

用所给的动词将下列句子译成英文，注意动词的用法。

1. 我们一定给这孩子最好的教育（education）。（give）
2. 这次航空旅行（trip）使我们非常高兴。（make）
3. 民航总局（CAAC）任命他为航空公司的总经理。（appoint）
4. 航空公司给每一个预订代理人（reservations agent）提供良好的培训。（provide）
5. 航空公司手册（manuals）由公司提供给自己的雇员（employees）。（supply）
6. 英国人叫这种飞机DC-3或Dakota。（call）
7. 我的爷爷（grandfather）要把这些花送给我奶奶。（give）
8. 我们发现沉船里的箱子（chest）内有珠宝（treasure）。（find out）
9. 你见过我们教授（professor）如此生气吗？（see）
10. 你认为钱能使一个人快乐吗？（make）

### 本课要点
了解及物动词、不及物动词，可以带双宾语的动词及可以有宾语补语的动词。
四种完成时态(1)

导言

完成时态也是英文中独有的一种“态”，汉语中没有相对应的表达方式。在学习时要根据说话的情景或文章的上下文细心体会。脱离说话时的情景或文章的上下文，完成时态就无从谈起，所以千万不可简单地把完成时态理解成一个完成的动作。

孙老师提示:

在学习完成时态之前，应首先了解英语动词的基本变化形式：原形、过去式、过去分词及它们的用法。由于完成时态比较复杂，本课分为两讲讲解，并且会反复练习以加深印象。

一、规则动词的过去式与过去分词相同。

二、不规则动词则需死记硬背，但其变化也有一定规律可循。以下准备了一份常用不规则动词分类表，以帮助大家记忆。

孙老师特别提示:

请同学们在课后务必把中学课本要求你们记住的不规则动词的现在时、过去时、过去分词牢牢记住，否则会直接影响到你的时态以及被动语态结构的学习，而且会导致你在高考中大量丢分——孙老师是最不主张死记硬背的，但是此处是必须要死记硬背的。也请老师家长督促并检查自己的孩子是否牢记已学的不规则动词的三种形式。千万注意！！！

英语常用不规则动词分类表

1. A--A--A型（现在式、过去式和过去分词同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>花费</td>
<td>[kɔst]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>割，切</td>
<td>[kʌt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>打</td>
<td>[hit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>让</td>
<td>[let]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>放下</td>
<td>[put]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>读</td>
<td>[ri:d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>伤</td>
<td>[hə:t]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. A--A--B型（现在式和过去式同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td>打</td>
<td>[bi:t] [bi:'tın]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LESSON EIGHT

#### 3、A--B--A型（现在式和过去分词同形）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>[kʌm] [kæm] [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>变</td>
<td>[biˈkʌm] [bɪˈkæm] [biˈkʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>跑</td>
<td>[rʌn] [ræn] [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4、A--B--B型

（1）在动词原形后加一个辅音字母“d”或“t”构成过去式或过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>燃烧</td>
<td>[bəurn] [bɜ:nt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned/learnt</td>
<td>learned/learnt</td>
<td>学习</td>
<td>[lɜ:n] [ˈlə:nid] / [lɜ:nt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>意思</td>
<td>[mi:n] [ment]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>听见</td>
<td>[hieə] [he:d]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（2）把动词原形的最后一个辅音字母“d”改为“t”构成过去式或过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>建筑</td>
<td>[bild] [bɪlt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>借给</td>
<td>[lend] [lent]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>失去</td>
<td>[luːz] [lɔ:st, lɔst]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>送</td>
<td>[send] [sent]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>花费</td>
<td>[spend] [spent]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（3）其他

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>付</td>
<td>[pei] [perd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>下蛋 放置</td>
<td>[lei] [leɪd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>说</td>
<td>[sei] [sed]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>带来</td>
<td>[brɪŋ] [brə:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>买</td>
<td>[bai] [bɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>想</td>
<td>[θɪŋk] [θɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>抓住</td>
<td>[kætʃ] [kɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（接下表）
### LESSON EIGHT

#### 5. A—B—C型（现在式、过去式和过去分词都不相同）

(1) 在动词原形后加“-n”或“-en”构成过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td>[i:t] [et] [i:t]n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LESSON EIGHT

#### 基本动词及其过去式和过去分词

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>落下</td>
<td>[fɔ:l] [fel] ['fɔ:lən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
<td>偷</td>
<td>[sti:l] ['steul] ['stoulən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>给</td>
<td>[griv] ['gerv] ['grvn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
<td>冻结</td>
<td>[fri:z] ['freuz] ['freuzn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td>拿</td>
<td>[teik] ['tu:k] ['teikən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>看见</td>
<td>[si:] [so:] [si:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>写</td>
<td>[rɔt] [raut] ['rɔt'n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
<td>骑</td>
<td>[rɔd] [rued] ['rədn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>驱动</td>
<td>[draiv] [druv] ['drəvn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
<td>抛，扔</td>
<td>[θrəu] [θru:] [θrəun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
<td>吹</td>
<td>[blu:] [blu] ['bləun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>生长</td>
<td>[gru:] ['gru:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>知道</td>
<td>[nju:] ['nju:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>飞</td>
<td>[flaɪ] [flu:] [fləun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>拉，绘画</td>
<td>[drɔ:] [dru:] ['dru:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
<td>展示</td>
<td>[ʃəʊ] [ʃəud] [ʃəʊn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（2）过去式加“-n”或“-en”构成过去分词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>说话</td>
<td>[spik] [spəuk] ['spəukən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>破碎,折断</td>
<td>[breɪk] [brəuk] ['brəukən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>waked/ woke/ waken</td>
<td>醒</td>
<td>[weɪk] ['weikt] [wauk] ['wəikən]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>选择</td>
<td>[ʃuːz] ['ʃuəz] ['ʃəʊzn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>忘记</td>
<td>[fə'gɛt] [fə'gɔt] ['fə'gɔtn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（3）变单词在重读音节中的元音字母“i”分别为“a”（过去式）和“u”（过去分词）。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形 (现在式)</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>开始</td>
<td>[brˈgin] [brˈgaŋ] [brˈɡən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
<td>按铃</td>
<td>[rʌŋ] [ræŋ] [rʌŋ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
<td>唱</td>
<td>[sæŋ] [sæŋ] [sæŋ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 动词原形（现在式）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sunk</td>
<td>沉</td>
<td>[sɪŋk] [sæŋk] [sʌŋk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
<td>游泳</td>
<td>[swɪm] [swæm] [swæm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>饮</td>
<td>[drɪŋk] [dræŋk] [drʌŋk]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

（接上表）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be (am、is、are)</td>
<td>was/ were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>是</td>
<td>[bɪ] [ˈeɪ'm] [ɪz] [wɒz] [wɜ:(r)] [bɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>做</td>
<td>[du:] [dɪd] [dʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>去</td>
<td>[ɡəʊ] [went] [ɡɒn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
<td>躺</td>
<td>[laɪ] [leɪ] [leɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>下蛋,放置</td>
<td>[leɪ] [lɛd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td>穿</td>
<td>[weə(r)] [wɔ:, wəʊr] [wɔ:n]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### （4）其他不规则动词的变化。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>动词原形（现在式）</th>
<th>过去式</th>
<th>过去分词</th>
<th>中文</th>
<th>音标</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be (am、is、are)</td>
<td>was/ were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>是</td>
<td>[bɪ] [ˈeɪ'm] [ɪz] [wɒz] [wɜ:(r)] [bɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>做</td>
<td>[du:] [dɪd] [dʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>去</td>
<td>[ɡəʊ] [went] [ɡɒn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
<td>躺</td>
<td>[laɪ] [leɪ] [leɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>下蛋,放置</td>
<td>[leɪ] [lɛd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td>穿</td>
<td>[weə(r)] [wɔ:, wəʊr] [wɔ:n]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 完成时态的基本用法

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

现在完成时态表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在

### 完成时态的构成

**Have (has) + 过去分词**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
<th>主系表</th>
<th>主谓宾</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在完成</td>
<td>have (has) been</td>
<td>have (has) done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去完成</td>
<td>had been</td>
<td>had done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来完成</td>
<td>will have been</td>
<td>will have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来完成</td>
<td>would have been</td>
<td>would have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 完成时态的基本用法

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

现在完成时态表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在

通常用于持续性较强的动词，例如：live, study, wait for, be等等，并且常常与since, for连用，since给出的是过去的一个时间点，如since 1958，而for往往给出的是一个时间段，如for three years。

### 一般现在时与现在完成时的比较

1. **I am a teacher.**
   我是个老师。
2. **I have been a teacher.**
   我一直是个老师。

（1）现在时

（2）现在完成
I study English.
我在学英语。（目前）

I have studied English for 5 years.
我学了五年英语。（五年来我一直在学）

过去时与现在完成时的比较

I studied English for 5 years.
我学过五年英语。（曾经）

I have studied English since 2000.
自从2000年开始,我一直在学英语。（持续到现在）

将来完成时态的基本用法

I will have studied English for 30 years by 2022.
到2022年为止,我就学了30年英语了。（从2022年往前推30年，即：从1992年至2022年。）

过去完成时态的基本用法

I had studied English for 10 years by the end of the last year.
到去年年底为止,我学了十年英语。（从去年年底向过去推十年）

孙老师提示:
从上面的句子可以看出,完成时态的基本用法是——表示一个过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时为止。即：到现在为止就用现在完成时，到过去为止就用过去完成时，到将来为止就用将来完成时。
完满时态在主从句中的用法
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

完成时态除了上面讲到的两种基本用法之外，在主从句中通常可以用来表示主句与从句动作发生的先后次序。

He knows that \( \{ \)
I studied English last year.
I study English every day.
I will study English next year.
I have studied for 10 years.
He knows that he has studied English.
He has studied for 10 years.
I know that he studied English last year.
He said that he studied English in 1998.
He said that he would study English next year.
He said that he had studied English.

请比较下例从句中时态的区别

I know that he studied English last year.
He said that he studied English in 1998.
He said that he would study English next year.
He said that he had studied English.

（学过英语，强调从句动作发生在主句之前）

He said that he had studied English for 10 years.
He said that he would have studied English for 10 years by the end of next year.

口头作业

要求：
背诵下面的句子，并将其变化成否定句及疑问句，做到句型、时态不错、不结巴。

The students have studied English.
The students had studied English.
The students will have studied English.
The students would have studied English.

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

练习非常重要，是检查你是否理解的重要手段，也是高考拿高分不可缺少的一环。

孙老师特别提示：
1. 注意英语的三个句子，举什么旗子不要错，不要丢。
2. 注意时态，特别是主从句中时态的使用。
LESSON EIGHT
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

3. 注意句子的肯定、否定及疑问形式，别忘了问号。
4. 注意定语的位置。
5. 小心单数复数和冠词。

1. 昨天他告诉我警察把他爹抓走了。
2. 昨天你爸爸告诉我明年他要挣一百万。
3. 你知道谁把我的苹果吃了吗？
4. 你知道昨天谁把我的苹果吃了吗？
5. 我不相信他学过英语。
6. 你知道到2015年孙老师就教了多少年英语了吗？
7. 前年我妈妈告诉我自从2000年开始我就一直给我妈妈找麻烦。
8. 昨天你们班的那个漂亮女孩问我，谁把他们班的那个傻子杀了。
9. 到去年年底为止，我爸爸攒了一百美元。
10. 到现在为止我爸爸攒了一千美元。
11. 到今年年底为止我爸爸攒了一万美元。
12. 别告诉我妈妈我父亲到今年年底攒了多少美元。

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

I`m glad  that  （跟从句）
I`m sure  that  （跟从句）
I`m sorry  that  （跟从句）
I`m afraid  that  （跟从句）

1. 昨天他问我，自从2000年开始，你们班长在教室里捡了多少个钱包了。  
2. 你知道那个从英国来的老师到今年年底就在中国住了多少年了吗？
3. 我很高兴你昨天通过了考试。
4. 你知道谁把教室里的玻璃给打了吗？
5. 他昨天说，自从他出生以来他从未见过他父亲。
6. 前天他告诉我，到今年年底为止，他就攒了一千美元了。

本课要点

1. 熟练掌握四种完成时的构成以及相应肯定、否定和疑问形式，注意人称变化。
2. 记住四种完成时的用法，即：表示一个过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时为止。到现在为止就用现在完成时，到过去为止就用过去完成时，到将来为止就用将来完成时。
3. 熟练掌握经常与完成时态连用的介词since、for、by。
4. 注意完成时态在主从句中的应用。
完成时态也是英文中独有的一种“态”，汉语中没有相对应的表达方式。在学习时要根据说话的情景或文章的上下文细心体会。脱离说话时的情景或文章的上下文，完成时态就无从谈起，所以千万不可简单地把完成时态理解成一个完成的动作。

完成时态的构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
<th>主系表</th>
<th>主谓宾</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在完成</td>
<td>have (has) been</td>
<td>have (has) done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去完成</td>
<td>had been</td>
<td>had done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来完成</td>
<td>will have been</td>
<td>will have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来完成</td>
<td>would have been</td>
<td>would have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

现在完成时态的基本用法
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 表示过去发生的动作一直持续到现在。

通常用于持续性较强的动词，例如：live, study, wait for, be等等，并且常常与since, for连用，since给出的是过去的一个时间点，如since 1958, 而for往往给出的是一个时间段，如for three years。

- He has studied English for eight years.
- He studied English for eight years.
- Since 1980, they have known each other.
- We have waited for you for a long time.
- Have you lived here for over ten years?

过去完成时态，将来完成时态和过去将来完成时态

学习完成时态应注意，所有完成时态在“态”的概念上是一样的，现在完成时态、过去完成时态、将来完成时态、过去将来完成时态所不同的只是时间上的概念。所以我们只要掌握现在完成时态，然后在时间上向过去推便是过去完成时态，向将来推便是将来完成时态。
注: 介词 by 的用法。
- by now 现在完成时态
- by 2000 过去完成时态
- by 2020 将来完成时态

I will have studied English for 20 years by 2020.

- We will have studied English for 10 years by the end of this year.
- He said that he would have studied English for two years by the end of the spring term.

孙老师提示:
该句表示 study 的动作是从 said 开始一直延续到将来，即 the end of the spring term。

比较下例时态的区别

He is a teacher.
He was a teacher.
He will be a teacher.
He said he would be a teacher.
He has been a teacher since 2000.
He said he had been a teacher.
He will have been a teacher for 30 years by 2020.
He said he would have been a teacher for 30 years by 2020.

2. 表示一个过去发生的动作对现在产生的结果和影响。

应该明确现在完成时态属于现在时态的范畴。它所强调的不是过去发生的动作，而是对现在产生的结果和影响，否则用一般过去时态就够了。请看下面的对话。

A – We will send someone to America.
我们要派一个人去美国。
B – I have been there.
我去过美国。
  = I was there and I know the country very well. Would you send me there?
  我去过那儿，很了解那个国家。能派我去吗？
C – I have not been there.
我还没去过那儿呢。
  = I didn’t go to America. It is my turn.
  我没去过。这次该我了。

孙老师提示:
上面对话的前提是大家都抢着去美国。所以 B 用现在完成时态是想说明自己有经验，派他去好，而 C 用现在完成时态是说自己没去过，轮也该轮到他了。两句都是强调对现在产生的影响。
A — We **will send** someone to Africa.
   我们要派一个人去非洲。
B — I **have been** there.
   我**都**去过非洲了。
   = I **was** there and **would** you send another there?
   我**都**去过那儿，能派别人去吗？

孙老师提示：
上面对话的前提是大家都不想去非洲。所以B用现在完成时态是想说明自己已经去过了，这回该派别人去。

### 过去时与现在完成时的比较
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. (1) Did you have dinner?
2. (2) Have you **had** dinner?

孙老师提示：
第一句是问有没有吃过饭这个事实。
   第二句强调对现在产生的影响，如：没吃饭我请你。

1. (1) Did you **study** English?
2. (2) Have you **studied** English?

孙老师提示：
第一句是问有没有学过英语这一个事实。
   第二句强调对现在产生的影响，如：应聘时，面试人员用此话，表示如果没有学过，可能不会被录用。

1. (1) Lao Zhang **died**.
2. (2) Lao Zhang **has died**.

孙老师提示：
第一句说明老张死了这一事实。
   第二句则表示老张的死对听话的人有一定的影响，老张与听话的人有一定的关系，如：老张欠听话人的钱。

### 比较下例过去时与现在完成时
1. (1) I **left** my exercise book at home.

2. (2) I **have left** my exercise book at home.

   = I **left** my exercise book at home, so I **can’t give** it to you.
LESSON NINE
孙老师课堂•三句通简单英语
www.teachersun.com

孙老师提示：

第一句一般过去时只是说把作业本忘在家了。而现在完成时除了“我不能交作业了”。所以现在完成时包含一个过去时态和一个现在时态。说话人所强调的是现在时态，即对现在产生的结果和影响，但这种结果和影响并没有直接说出来，正是完成时态比较难理解的地方。

（1）He broke his leg yesterday.

（2）He has broken his leg.

= He broke his leg, so he can’t play football this week.

（1）I finished the letter.

（2）I have finished the letter.

= I finished the letter. Here it is now.

（1）He read all these books.

（2）He has read all these books.

= He read all these books, so he knows them and can talk about them.

孙老师提示：

因现在完成时态所关心的是对现在产生的结果和影响，并不在乎过去的动作是过去什么时间发生的，所以不能和表示过去的时间状语连用。因此当问及某一动作曾发生的具体时间时，不用完成时。例：

● When did you get there?

× When have you got there?

孙老师提示：

过去完成时、将来完成时、过去将来完成时与现在完成时用法一样，只所产生影响的时间点不同而已。

● We will have fulfilled our work by the end of this month.

孙老师提示：

该句是指在“the end of this month”我们将完成工作，对本月底产生的影响，也许是我们就

有空了或我们就可以休息一下了。总之具体情况具体分析。
3. 完成时态在主从句中的用法。

完成时态除上面讲到的两种基本用法之外，在主从句中通常可以用来表示主句与从句动作发生的先后次序。

- Do you know he has finished his homework?
  现在完成时态“has finished”表示发生在一般现在时态“know”之前。

- I heard he had bought a new car.
  过去完成时态“had bought”表示发生在过去时态“heard”之前。

从上面几个例句可以看出，在主从句中现在完成时态往往表示发生在另一个现在时态的动作之前，而过去完成时态则表示发生在另一个过去时态的动作之前。请注意下面的例句：

I know that he studied English last year.
He said that he studied English in 1998.
He said that he would study English next year.
He said that he had studied English.
He said that he had studied English for 10 years.
He said that he would have studied English for 10 years by the end of next year.

以上简单地介绍了在主从句中完成时态的用法，请同学们在做练习时多加注意。

### 口头作业

要求：背诵下面的句子，并将其变化成否定句及疑问句，做到句型不错，不结巴！

请同学们务必把时态的构成表背得滚瓜烂熟，这是英语基础的基础，万万不可轻视，此处一乱，整个英语体系全乱!

**主 + 谓 + 宾**

The students have studied English.
The students had studied English.
The students will have studied English.
The students would have studied English.

**主 + 系动词 + 表**

You have been a teacher.
You had been a teacher.
You will have been a teacher.
You would have been a teacher.
LESSON NINE

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 他经常说他现在是个老师。
2. 他经常说他过去是个老师。
3. 他经常说他将来是一个老师。
4. 他经常说从2000年以来他一直是一个老师。
5. 他经常说到2020年，他就当了30年老师了。
6. 昨天，他说他是一个老师。
7. 昨天，他说到2020年，他就当了30年的老师了。
8. 昨天，他说自从2000年以来他一直是一个老师。

课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

由于使用完成时态通常和说话时的情景及文章的上下文有着密切的关系，因此希望同学们在做练习时细心体会，努力掌握完成时态的精髓。

完成下列句子：
1. He said _______（他从未去过西藏Tibet）。
2. _______（他从未给我写过信）since he left Beijing.
3. He said _______（他下月底就不用我的照相机了camera）。
4. I hope _______（雨会在明天中午前停下来）。
5. By the end of that year _______（他已集了一千多张中国邮票）。
6. I really don’t know _______（他是否已经到了实验室laboratory）。
7. The boy knows that he must be braver and firmer _______（在他经历了这样的事情之后）。
8. I could not remember whether _______（他已经付了字典钱）。
9. I’m afraid I _______（到时还没有找到正确的答案）。
10. Don’t worry. Before I get home I _______（就会把这件事全忘光的）。

课堂练习（3）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

时态选择（该题全部取自于高考原卷）

1. —What do you want _______ those old boxes?
   —To put things in when I move to the new flat.
   A. by                            B. for        C. of                              D. with

2. —____ he start at once or wait for a while?
   —Let him start at once.
   A. Will                        B. Would                  C. Does                      D. Shall

3. I can’t tell you if it____ tomorrow.
   A. will rain                     B. rains              C. shall rain             D. does rain

4. —Did you watch the play on CCTV 1 last night? It was really good.
—No, I didn't______?
—“Tea House”.
A. What was it  B. What's on
C. What was it about  D. How about it

5. —Can you give me the right answer?
—Sorry, I_______. Would you repeat that question?
A. hadn’t listened  B. haven’t listened
C. don’t listen  D. wasn’t listening

6. I promised to get there before 5 o’clock, but now the rain is pouring down. They______ for me impatiently.
A. may wait  B. ought to wait
C. could wait  D. must be waiting

7. —Haven't seen you for ages! Do you still work in Fuzhou?
—_______. It's two years since I worked there.
A. Yes, I have  B. Yes, I do
C. No, I haven't  D. No, I don't

8. —Goodbye, Peter, remember me to your parents.
—_______.
A. It's very kind of you to say so  B. Thanks, I will
C. You are so kind  D. Thanks, what a good idea

9. —You are talking too much.
—Only at home. No one______ me but you.
A. is hearing  B. had heard
C. hears  D. heard

10. —We want someone to design the new art museum for us.
—_____the young fellow have a try?
A. May  B. Shall
C. Will  D. Need

11. I wonder why Jenny______ us recently. We should have heard from her by now.
A. hasn't written  B. doesn't write
C. won't write  D. hadn't written

12. I didn't like aunt Lucy, who______ without warning and presenting
A. always turned up  B. has always turned up
C. was always turned up  D. was always turning up

13. —Has Tommy finished his homework yet?
—I have no idea; he______ it this morning.
A. was doing  B. had been doing
C. has done  D. did

14. The little girl______ her heart out because she______ her toy bear and believed she wasn’t ever going to find it.
A. had cried; lost  B. cried; had lost
C. has cried; has lost  D. cries; has lost
15. —Hey, look where you are going?
   —Oh, I’m terribly sorry ____________.
   A. I’m not noticing                  B. I wasn’t noticing
   C. I haven’t noticed                D. I don’t notice

16. —Do you know your town at all?
   —No, this is the first time I ______ here.
   A. was                  B. have been        C. came        D. am coming

17. —I’m sorry to keep you waiting.
   —Oh, not at all. I __________ here only a few minutes.
   A. have been            B. had been         C. was          D. will be

18. —__________ my glasses?
   —Yes, I saw them on your bed a minute ago.
   A. Do you see            B. Had you seen
   C. Would you see         D. Have you seen

19. You don’t need to describe her.
   I ______ her several times.
   A. had met              B. have met          C. met           D. meet

20. —Who is Jerry Cooper?
   —______? I saw you shaking hands with him at the meeting.
   A. Don’t you meet him yet  B. Hadn’t you met him yet
   C. Didn’t you meet him yet D. Haven’t you met him yet

21. Helen ______ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband ______ home.
   A. has left; come        B. left; had come
   C. had left; came        D. left; came

22. —How long ______ each other before they ______ married?
   —For about a year.
   A. have they known; get
   B. did they know; were going to get
   C. do they know; are going to get
   D. had they known; got

本课要点

1、熟练掌握四种完成时的构成以及相应肯定、否定和疑问形式，注意人称变化。
2、牢记三种完成时的用法。即：
   (1) 表示一个过去发生的动作对说话时产生的结果和影响，即：对现在产生的结果和影响，用现在完成时，对过去产生的结果和影响用过去完成时，对将来产生的结果和影响用将来完成时。
   (2) 表示一个过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时为止。即：到现在为止就用现在完成时，到过去为止就用过去完成时，到将来为止就用将来完成时。
3、在主从句中通常可以用来表示主句与从句动作发生的先后次序。
在学习了进行时态和完成时态之后，我们就很容易理解完成进行时态。它既有完成态—过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时的含义，又有进行态—给人以生动的画面感，使语气更强的意义。也就是说它们是完成与进行两种“态”的结合。

### 完成时态的构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
<th>主系表</th>
<th>主动宾</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在完成</td>
<td>have (has) been</td>
<td>have (has) done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去完成</td>
<td>had been</td>
<td>had done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来完成</td>
<td>will have been</td>
<td>will have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来完成</td>
<td>would have been</td>
<td>would have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 完成进行时态的构成

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在完成进行时态</td>
<td>have (has) been doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去完成进行时态</td>
<td>had been doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来完成进行时态</td>
<td>will have been doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来完成进行时态</td>
<td>would have been doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示：
在学习完成时态时，我们已经了解完成时态有两种用法。
1. 过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时。
2. 过去的动作对说话时产生了影响。

完成进行时态只具备完成时态的第1种用法，即过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时，并加入进行态给人的画面感，使语气更强。下面通过完成进行时态与完成时态的比较加以说明。

现在完成进行时态与现在完成时态的比较

- My teacher has been working on that subject the last two years.
- My teacher has worked on that subject for the last two years.

这两年我的老师一直在研究那个课题。

孙老师提示：
第一句相比第二句，除了在持续性上相同外，还多了一种画面感，好像能够看到那位老师埋头工作的情景，所以语气更强。但用汉语很难译出两个句子的区别。
● I have been waiting for you for three years.
   我都整整等你三年了！
● I have waited for you for three years.
   我等你三年了。

孙老师提示：
第一句给人的感觉比第二句更强烈，用在不同场合有不同效果。如果是一个女孩等待出国三年归来的男友，可表示等得很辛苦。

下面是一道高考原题，从对话中可看出说话的人想加强语气，虽然c与d都对，但c更好些。

22. –Hi, Tracy, you look tired.
   –I am tired. I _____ the living room all day.
   A. painted B. had painted C. have been painting D. have painted

过去完成进行时态

● He was tired. He had been working all day.
   他累了。他都干了一整天。
● He was tired. He had worked all day.
   他累了。他干了一整天。

孙老师提示：
第一句由于有进行时态的画面感，给人的感觉要比第二句给人的感觉更“辛苦”些。

将来完成进行时态

● Mr. Smith will have been living in China for exactly twenty years in another month’s time.
   再过一个月，史密斯先生在中国就整整住了二十年了。
● Mr. Smith will have lived in China for twenty years in another month’s time.

过去将来完成进行时态

● He said that by the end of this year he would have been studying English for three years.
● He said that by the end of this year he would have studied English for three years.

孙老师提示：
第一句语气要比第二句强，更能给人一种史密斯在中国住了很长时间的感觉。

第一句想要给对方一种他学了很长时间英语的感觉，第二句则比较平淡。
将下列句子译成中文，并对每组句子加以比较。注意句子中时态的使用。

1. We have been cleaning the classroom.
   We have cleaned the classroom.

2. Who has been eating my apple?
   Who has eaten my apple?

3. Have you had lunch?
   When did you have lunch?

4. Who’s been here while I was out?
   Who was here while I was out?

5. How has he done it?
   How did he do it?

6. We have lived in London for eight years.
   We lived in London for eight years.

7. You are lying.
   You have been lying.

8. He came here after he finished school.
   He came here after he had finished school.

9. Tomorrow is Friday.
   Tomorrow will be Friday.

本课要点
1. 熟练掌握四种完成进行时态的构成以及相应肯定、否定和疑问形式，注意人称变化。
2. 牢记完成进行时态的含意——不过是加强对完成时态的语气而已。
3. 通过练习认真体会什么是“时”，什么是“态”，并体会各种时态之间的区别。
LESSON ELEVEN

被动语态

被动语态是动词的一种形式，只有主谓宾型才有被动语态，它所强调的不是动作的发出者，而是动作的接受者。在掌握了时态以后，学习被动语态并不难，重要的是牢记被动语态的动词形式。我们在后面为大家列了表格，请大家熟记。

- The policeman arrested the thief.
- The thief was arrested (by the policeman).

注：如果没有必要强调动作发出者，我们可以把by the policeman省略。

孙老师提示：
被动语态动词的基本形式是be+done（过去分词），例如下：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>一般时态</th>
<th>进行时态</th>
<th>完成</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在</td>
<td>is done</td>
<td>have been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>are done</td>
<td>has been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去</td>
<td>was done</td>
<td>had been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>were done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来</td>
<td>shall be done</td>
<td>shall have been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will be done</td>
<td>will have been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来</td>
<td>should be done</td>
<td>should have been done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>would be done</td>
<td>would be done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

英语常用不规则动词分类表

孙老师提示：
下面以“狗咬我”为例来说明各种时态主动与被动的变化：
Bite — bit  bit

The dog bites me.
I am bit by the dog.

The dog bit me.
I was bit by the dog.

The dog will bite me.
I will be bit by the dog.

The dog would bite me.
I would be bit by the dog.

The dog is biting me.
I am being bit by the dog.

The dog was biting me.
I was being bit by the dog.

The dog has bit me.
I have been bit by the dog.

The dog had bit me.
I had been bit by the dog.

课堂练习（1）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：

练习非常重要，是检查你是否理解的重要手段，也是拿高分不可缺少的一环。

将下列句子变成被动语态。
1. She is drawing (画) a picture of the house.
2. They will invite Tom to the party.
3. Workers should do the work with great care.
4. They will postpone the meeting till next Wednesday.
5. My mother doesn’t allow me to eat out.
6. He has repaired my car.
7. They are going to hold a dinner party.
8. The teacher was explaining (解释) the text when I came in.
9. The teacher has corrected these exercise books.
10. The policemen have caught the thief.
LESSON ELEVEN

孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 昨天我妈妈告诉我,我爸爸被狗咬(bite bit bit)了。
2. 我们村子里去年盖了一所新学校。
3. 我们教室正在被我们老师打扫着。
4. 桌子上的苹果已经被狗吃完了。
5. 到2008年为止,北京盖了100所新学校。
6. 到现在为止,在北京已经有一万辆自行车被偷走了。

课堂练习（3）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

通过下列各地考题的练习,可以巩固已学的语态,帮助学生扩大词汇量,同时了解考点。练习不要过于着急,可以让学生十题为一个单元,边练边讲边纠正。

在做时态与语态题时,第一考虑主动被动;第二考虑时;第三考虑态。

孙老师提示:

1. Hong Kong _______ to be a good place for eating today.
   A. knows   B. knew    C. is known    D. was known

2. Last month a new law _______ in China to stop people from smoking in public places.
   A. is passed   B. passes    C. had passed    D. was passed

3. A new factory is being built in Neijiang. I hope it _______ at the end of this year.
   A. will be finished    B. finishes    C. will finish

4. --Can you sing this English song?
   --Of course, I can. It _______ many times on the radio.
   A. taught   B. has taught   C. is taught   D. has been taught

5. Another two months will be needed before the new bridge _______.
   A. completes   B. is completed    C. has completed   D. will be completed

6. We will fly a kite as soon as your homework _______.
   A. finishes   B. will be finished   C. has finished   D. is finished

7. A Disneyland Park (迪斯尼乐园) _______ in Shanghai Pudong New Area in the near future.
   A. builds   B. has built   C. will build   D. will be built
8. --I want to teach in Tibet when I graduate from the college.
   --Me too. Teachers _______ very much there.
   A. need                             B. are needing                C. are needed                D. needed

   A. was built                        B. build                        C. will be built               D. is built

10. --Look, what an old palace! It looks so great!
    --Yeah, it _______ nearly 800 years ago.
    A. was building               B. was built                    C. has built                    D. is built

11. --Which sport are you in at the school sports meeting?
    --No decision yet. I think it _______ after discussing with my PE teacher (体育课老师), Mr.Yuan.
    A. will be decided            B. will decide                C. was decided                 D. is decided

12. --It's said that an airport _______ in Yangzhou.
    --It's true. That's what we are getting excited about these days.
    A. builds                                                                 B. will build                    C. is building              D. will be built

13. No conclusion _______ before we complete this test.
    A. is made                       B. will be made              C. has made                  D. made

14. --Susan, why are you still here? They are all ready to start.
    --I'm sorry, but I _______ when to leave.
    A. don't tell                      B. didn't wel                   C. wasn't told                D. not told

15. --Long time no see!
    --I've just retuned. I ___ to Zhengzhou for a meeting last month.
    A. am sent                       B. was sent                     C. am sending               D. was sending

16. --Did you see the movie last night?
    --Yes. But when I got the movie theater, the film ______ for ten minutes.
    A. had begun                   B. had been on                C. had started                 D. begun

17. The little boy _______ by a cat this morning.
    A. was made to cry                                                  B. was made cry
    C. made to cry                                                         D. made cry

18. These trees in our school _______ ten years ago.
    A. were planted                                                      B. are planted
    C. planted                                                                 D. was planted
19. Every year lots of trees ______ to make our country more beautiful.
   A. is planted               B. was planted
   C. are planted             D. were planted

20. -- What a clean and bright classroom, isn't it?
    -- Yes, it's always clean and bright because it ______ every day.
   A. cleans  B. cleaned  C. is cleaned  D. was cleaned

21. Thousands of houses ____ by the floods in Guangxi last month.
   A. destroy                 B. destroyed
   C. have destroyed         D. were destroyed

22. The road ______ last year.
   A. builds                  B. built
   C. was built              D. is built

23. The students ______ how to do the experiment in class yesterday.
   A. were taught            B. better
   C. was taught             D. teach

24. Where ______ the 2010 World EXPO ______? --In Shanghai.
   A. does, hold             B. has, held
   C. will, hold             D. is, held

25. Little Mermaid ______ to Shanghai and visitors can see it there now.
   A. has moved              B. has been moved
   C. will move              D. was moved

26. Liu Xiang ______ by his coach to train regularly.
   A. advised                B. advises
   C. was advised            D. be advised

27. --Lots of trees and flowers _____ on both sides of Huanshan Road last year.
    --Oh, that's beautiful.
   A. are planted            B. were planting
   C. were planted           D. have planted

28. --Mum, can I go to the zoo with Linda?
    --When your homework ______, you can go swimming.
   A. is finished            B. was finished
   C. finishes               D. finished

29. Tomorrow there's a programme about our school on TV, then it ____ by millions of people.
   A. will see               B. saw
   C. will be seen           D. was seen

30. -- The 2015 Asian Sports Meet ____ this November in Guangzhou.
    --Yes. I wish Chinese players will do well.
31. --There's too much salt in the Chinese diet. 
   --So there is. The WHO says only 1.5 grams of salt _____ or each man every day. 
   A. is needed B. needs C. will need D. has needed

32. --I hear Sam has gone to Qingdao for his holiday. 
   --Oh, how nice! Do you know when he_____? 
   A. left B. was leaving C. has left D. had left

33. It _____ to drive after drinking wine. 
   A. is allowed B. is not allowed C. is made D. is welcome

34. We have _____ up early in order to catch the early bus. 
   A. used to get B. been used to get C. used for getting D. been used to getting

35. -- It's difficult for the village children to cross the river for school. 
   -- I think a bridge _______ over the river. 
   A. should be built B. is being built C. has been built D. was built

36. The World Expo (世博会) _____ in Shanghai now. 
   A. being had B. is having C. is holding D. is being held

37. My e-mail ____ to you last night. Have you received it _____? 
   A. sent; yet B. is sent; already C. was sent; yet

38. I ______to take part in the English speech contest last week. 
   A. ask B. asked C. am asked D. was asked

39. --_______ the Internet _______ in your school? 
   --Yes, but the computer in our office has broken down. 
   A. Is, used B. Is, using C. Does, use D. Has, used

40. --Excuse me, what's this for? 
   --It's a cleaner and it _____ to pick up dirt. 
   A. uses B. is used C. is using D. used

本课要点
熟背被动语态在各种时态中动词的变化。
LESSON TWELVE

学习方法七要素

工欲善其事，必先利其器
——良好的学习方法是制胜的又一法宝。
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、尽可能的理解你要记忆的知识，不懂不要死记硬背。
2、善于将知识分类，不同的概念要条理清晰不可混淆。
3、重复。
4、学会联想思维及记忆，如class(班级)--lass(小妞)--ass(蠢驴)。这样可以成倍提高记忆速度。

The class will wait for me in the class room in the evening.

Ear--near--clear--nuclear
Earn   earth
Pimple dimple simple
Starch

5、学习要专心，重效果，疲劳战术不可取。

6、图画记忆是一种良好的记忆法。通俗的说就是在复习时不要先看书或笔记，而是先回忆。
   这是帮你整理大脑思维及记忆的最好方法之一。

7、享受学习。累了，心情不好时学习效率很低。享受学习不是空话——而是建立在回报的基础上，即在投入时间与努力之后，学习成绩能够大幅提高，孩子就会对学习产生兴趣，反之会厌恶学习。因此，一个良好的突破口是使孩子喜欢学习的重要手段。

本课要点

1、良好的学习方法可以事半功倍。
### 时态复习

#### 重要提示

时态是英语中非常复杂的概念，必须通过长期的阅读和在实际会话中细心体会才能掌握。我们通过下面的表，试图让同学们抓住时态中最主要的用法和规律。英语时态是“时”与“态”的结合，即四种时间概念加四种不同的情态（实际上只有两种情态，进行态和完成态，一般时不含情态，完成进行态是完成态与进行态的结合）。如果从这样一个角度去理解（把下表竖列的时间加横行的情态），就能够比较容易掌握16种时态。希望在练习时，细心体会，多问为什么。

#### 时态构成表

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>一般</th>
<th>进行</th>
<th>完成</th>
<th>完成进行</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>主谓宾</td>
<td>主系表</td>
<td>主谓宾</td>
<td>主系表</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>现在</td>
<td>do (does)</td>
<td>is (am are)</td>
<td>is (am are) doing</td>
<td>have (has) been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>was (were)</td>
<td>was (were) doing</td>
<td>had done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来</td>
<td>will (shall) do</td>
<td>will be</td>
<td>will be doing</td>
<td>will have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来</td>
<td>would (should) do</td>
<td>would be</td>
<td>would be doing</td>
<td>would have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

正像苏轼诗中所云：横看成岭侧成峰，远近高低各不同。不识庐山真面目，只缘身在此山中。通过表中横竖列之间的关系来记忆这个时态表，只要记住各时态相同和不同的地方，就变得比较容易了。谓主状句型，这里没有列出，是因为只要在主系表句型前加there即可，该句型通常只有一般时态。
### 时态用法表

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>一般</th>
<th>进行态</th>
<th>完成态</th>
<th>完成进行态</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>指在时间概念上加进情态</td>
<td>通常表示动作发生的纯时间概念，不含情态。</td>
<td>1表示一个进行的动作。 2表示暂时性的动作。 3给人画面感，带有某种感情色彩。</td>
<td>1表示过去发生的动作对说话时产生的影响。 2表示过去发生的动作一直持续到说话时。 3用于主从句中强调主从句动作发生的先后次序。</td>
<td>完成时态的第二种用法，即表示持续的用法与进行态的结合，经常用于加强完成时态的语气。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>现在</td>
<td>一般现在时</td>
<td>现在进行时</td>
<td>现在完成时</td>
<td>现在完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>客观事实或真理。目前的状况或反复发生的动作。</td>
<td>现在时+进行态</td>
<td>现在时+完成态</td>
<td>现在时+完成进行态</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去</td>
<td>一般过去时</td>
<td>过去进行时</td>
<td>过去完成时</td>
<td>过去完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>过去的状态或发生的动作。</td>
<td>过去时+进行态</td>
<td>过去时+完成态</td>
<td>过去时+完成进行态</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来</td>
<td>一般将来时</td>
<td>将来进行时</td>
<td>将来完成时</td>
<td>将来完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>将来的状态或发生的动作。</td>
<td>将来时+进行态</td>
<td>将来时+完成态</td>
<td>将来时+完成进行态</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来</td>
<td>过去将来时</td>
<td>过去将来进行时</td>
<td>过去将来完成时</td>
<td>过去将来完成进行时</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>站在过去的角度谈将来的状态或动作。</td>
<td>过去将来时+进行态</td>
<td>过去将来时+完成态</td>
<td>过去将来时+完成进行态</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)
时态题解题思路顺序
在高考单选中，如发现是时态题，思考顺序应按下面顺序。
我们先以下例六题带大家做一下，以便建立正确的解题思路。
1. 主动 被动
2. 时
3. 态

1. If city noises ____ from increasing, people ____ shout to be heard even at the dinner table 20 years from now.
   A. are not kept; will have to  B. are not kept; have to  
   C. do not keep; will have to  D. do not keep; have to  
   【注】首先确定本题第一个空用被动语态，选A或B，第二个空主将从现应用将来时，所以A为正确答案。

2. In some parts of the world, tea ____ with milk and sugar.
   A. is serving  B. is served
   C. serves  D. served
   【注】主语是tea, 只B是被动。

3. My dictionary _____. I have looked for it everywhere but still it.
   A. has lost; don’t find  B. is missing; don’t find
   C. has lost; haven’t found  D. is missing; haven’t found
   【注】第一个空为主系表，表示字典找不到了，第二个空表示至今还未找到，用现在完成时。

4. I _____ one more stamp before my collection _____.
   A. has completed  B. completes
   C. has been completed  D. is completed
   【注】应选被动，C与A是被动，主将从现，所以选D，这里应注意将来时的多种表达方式，详见以下说明。

“主将从现”将来时的几种表达:
1. will
   is going to  …
   is to
   is about to
2. can  …
3. Want  plan  need
4. 祈使句
5. --____ the sports meet might be put off.
   --Yes, it all depends on the weather.
   A. I’ve been told
   B. I’ve told
   C. I’m told
   D. I told
   【注】应选被动，A或C是正确答案，A是被动的完成时态，表示发生在主句 might be put off 之前。

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：
选择（本栏题全部来自历年高考原卷，很多题通过率只有30%左右，可见学生在时态上非常混乱，希望同学们在做题时，能够举一反三，真正掌握时态的精髓）。

1. —Hey, look where you are going?
   —Oh, I’m terribly sorry._____.
   A. I’m not noticing
   B. I wasn’t noticing
   C. I haven’t noticed
   D. I don’t notice

2. There was a lot of fun at yesterday’s party. You _____ come, but why didn’t you?
   A. must have
   B. should
   C. need have
   D. ought to have

3. —We could have walked to the station, it was so near.
   —Yes, A taxi _____ at all necessary.
   A. wasn’t
   B. hadn’t been
   C. wouldn’t
   D. won’t be

4. —Do you know our town at all?
   — No, this is the first time I _____ here.
   A. was
   B. have been
   C. came
   D. am coming

5. Tom _____ into the house when no one _____.
   A. slipped; was looking
   B. had slipped; looked
   C. slipped; had looked
   D. was slipping; looked

6. My dictionary _____ . I have looked for it everywhere but still ______ it.
   A. has lost; don’t find
   B. is missing; don’t find
   C. has lost; haven’t found
   D. is missing; haven’t found

7. In some parts of the world, tea _____ with milk and sugar.
   A. is serving
   B. is served
8. —I’m sorry to keep you waiting.
   —Oh, not at all. I _____ here only a few minutes.
   A. have been  B. had been
   C. was  D. will be

9. I need one more stamp before my collection_____.
   A. has completed  B. completes
   C. has been completed  D. is completed

10. —_____ the sports meeting might be put off.
    —Yes, it all depends on the weather.
    A. I’ve been told  B. I’ve told
    C. I’m told  D. I told

11. As she _____ the newspaper, Granny _____ asleep.
    A. read; was falling  B. was reading; fell
    C. was reading; was falling  D. read; fell

12. Shirley _____ a book about china last year but I don’t know whether she has finished it.
    A. has written  B. wrote
    C. had written  D. was writing

13. You don’t need to describe her. I _____ her several times.
    A. had met  B. have met
    C. met  D. meet

14. —Who is Jerry Cooper?
   —______? I saw you shaking hands with him at the meeting.
   A. Don’t you meet him yet  B. Hadn’t you met him yet
   C.Didn’t you meet him yet  D. Haven’t you met him yet

15. Helen _____ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband _____ home.
    A. has left; comes  B. left; had come
    C. had left; came  D. left; came

16. —I haven’t heard from Henry for a long time.
   —What do you suppose _____ to him?
   A. was happening  B. to happen
   C. has happened  D. had happened

17. —How long _____ each other before they _____ married?
—For about a year.
A. have they known; get
B. did they know; were going to get
C. do they know; are going to get
D. had they known; got

18. The pen I _____ I _____ is on my desk, right under my nose.
A. think; lost
B. thought; had lost
C. think; had lost
D. thought; have lost

19.—Oh, it’s you! I _____ you.
—I’ve just had my hair cut and I’m wearing new glasses.
A. didn’t recognize
B. hadn’t recognized
C. haven’t recognized
D. don’t recognize

20.—Nancy is not coming tonight.
—But she ____!
A. promises
B. promised
C. will promise
D. had promised

21.—Hi, Tracy, you look tired.
—I am tired. I _____ the living room all day.
A. painted
B. had painted
C. have been painting
D. have painted

22. The price _____, but I doubt whether it will remain so.
A. went down
B. will go down
C. has gone down
D. was going down

23.—You’re drinking too much.
—Only at home. No one _____ me but you.
A. is seeing
B. had seen
C. sees
D. saw

24. I’ve won a holiday for two to Florida. I _____ my mum.
A. am taking
B. have taken
C. take
D. will have taken

25. All the preparations for the task _____, and we’re ready to start.
A. completed
B. complete
C. had been completed
D. have been completed

26.— _____ my glasses?
—Yes, I saw them on your bed a minute ago.
A. Do you see
B. Had you seen
C. Would you see
D. Have you seen

27.—You’ve left the light on.
—Oh, so I have.____and turn it off.
A. I’ll go
B. I’ve gone
C. I go
D. I’m going

28. My uncle____until he was forty-five.
A. married
B. was not married
C. was not marrying
D. would marry

29. Hundreds of jobs____if the factory closes.
A. lose
B. will be lost
C. are lost
D. will lose

30. A new cinema____here. They hope to finish it next month.
A. will be built
B. is built
C. has been built
D. is being built

Caught Between Two Cultures

I was born and __(1)__ (raise) in Hong Kong. For the past six years I __(2)__(live) in the United States. I __(3)__ (work) as a salesgirl in a large department store. Right now I __(4)__ (go) through a difficult period of my life which __(5)__ (be) hard for me to talk about.

A few months ago I __(6)__(go) to Hong Kong for a visit. It __(7)__ (be) the first time I’d gone back there since coming to the United States. I __(8)__ (be) eager to see my parents, my brothers and sisters, and my friends.

I really __(9)__ (get) a shock when I __(10)__ (arrive). Hong Kong __(11)__ (be) not the same city I __(12)__ (leave) six years ago. Things __(13)__ (change) so much that I __(14)__ (not recognize) parts of it. My elementary school __(15)__ (be)gone. The house on the street where I __(16)__ (use) to live __(17)__ (tear down) and replaced by office buildings.

The shock from the physical changes in the city, however, __(18)__ (be) nothing compared to the confusion and hurt I soon __(19)__ (begin) to feel in my parents’ home. My family __(20)__ (greet) me warmly when I __(21)__(arrive). While my mother __(22)__ (prepare) a special dinner in my honor, the rest of the family eagerly __(23)__ (ask) me questions about my life in the United States. I __(24)__ (feel) happy that day and for a couple of days after, but then I __(25)__ (begin) to
feel that something ____(26)__ (be) wrong. I ____(27)__ (notice) that my family, especially my mother, sometimes ____(28)__ (glance) at me in a strange way when I ____(29)__ (speak). They gradually ____(30)__ (become) less warm and friendly toward me, and I ____(31)__ (become) uncomfortable and ____(32)__ (confuse) as to why they ____(33)__ (behave) that way.

I ____(34)__ (decide) to talk to my mother. She ____(35)__ (ask) me, “‘____(36)__ you ____(37)__ (forget) your Chinese way?’” I ____(38)__ (ask) her what she ____(39)__ (mean). She ____(40)__ (say), “You ____(41)__ (forget) the place of a woman in a Chinese home. You ____(42)__ (talk) when you ____(43)__ (remain) silent. You ____(44)__ (speak) on matters that ____(45)__ (be) concerned only to the men. You ____(46)__ (speak) openly of your inner feelings and desires. That ____(47)__ (be) not the way of a Chinese woman. We ____(48)__ (keep) our thoughts and feelings to ourselves.”

As my mother spoke, I ____(49)__ (realize) what ____(50)__ (happen) to me. Americans, including American women, ____(51)__ (be) much free in expressing their thoughts and feelings. Also American women ____(52)__ (feel) as free as the men to speak or give an opinion about any subject. They ____(53)__ (not take) a silent back seat during a discussion. I ____(54)__ (guess) that through my association with Americans during the past six years, I ____(55)__ (gradually adopt) some of their ways.

During the next few days I ____(56)__ (try) to be a Chinese woman. But it ____(57)__ (not work). My family ____(58)__ (remain) distant from me. They ____(59)__ (can no longer accept) me fully as one of them. I ____(60)__ (become) more uncomfortable and hurt as things were said and done that ____(61)__ (make) me feel that I ____(62)__ (be) an outsider, a stranger in my own country.

I ____(63)__ (cut) my visit short by three weeks and ____(64)__ (come) back to the United States. But coming back here ____(65)__ (not lessen) the confusion and pain. In fact, I ____(66)__ (feel) more confused than before. I now ____(67)__ (feel) homeless. I ____(68)__ (not feel) like an American. Americans ____(69)__ (not accept) me. The women I ____(70)__ (work) with at the store are polite enough, but they ____(71)__ (not try) to get close to me or let me get close to them. During the morning coffee break they ____(72)__ (make) plans to have lunch together and go shopping. On Fridays they ____(73)__ (talk) about the disco place they ____(74)__ (go) to that night. They never ____(75)__ (include) me in their plans. My appearance, my name, and my oriental features ____(76)__ (mark) me as a foreigner. I ____(77)__ (feel) for a long time that I ____(78)__ (not accept) by Americans, but I ____(79)__ (feel) that I ____(80)__ (be) Chinese and that my home ____(81)__ (be) Hong Kong. Now I no longer ____(82)__ (consider) Hong Kong as my home. And so I ____(83)__ (feel) homeless. I ____(84)__ (catch) between the old world where I no longer ____(85)__ (belong) and the new world which ____(86)__ (not yet accept) me.

本课要点

1. 掌握英语的时态对学好英语至关重要，在以后的学习与阅读中应多问为什么？细心体会与总结。
LESSON FOURTEEN

名词性从句（1）

导言
从句其实就是三个句型的衍生物。掌握了三个句型就已经掌握了名词性从句。名词性从句并不难，只是在我们过去学过的三种基本句型中出现名词的位置上，根据需要将名词扩大成一个句子，并做小小的改动。也就是说在一个主系表或主谓宾句型中再套上一个主系表或主谓宾的句子而已。注意中英文表达上的区别。

由连词that、if、whether引导的名词性从句

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主语</th>
<th>谓语</th>
<th>宾语（宾语从句）</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>整个句子</td>
<td>知道</td>
<td>地球围着太阳运行。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>主语</td>
<td>状语</td>
<td>谓语</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everyone</td>
<td>knows (that) the earth moves around the sun.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>连词</td>
<td>主语</td>
<td>谓语</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示：
从上面的例句可以看出，宾语从句只是将宾语扩大成一个句子，用连词 that 引导。因为 that 没有实际意思，通常可以省略。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主语（主语从句）</th>
<th>系</th>
<th>表语</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>地球围着太阳运行</td>
<td>是</td>
<td>一条真理。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>主语（主语从句）</td>
<td>系</td>
<td>表语</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That the Earth moves around the sun</td>
<td>is a truth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>形式主语系表语</td>
<td>主语（主语从句）</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a truth (that) the Earth moves around the Sun.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示：
同样的一个句子，当把它放在主语的位置时，我们便称其为主语从句。但在英语中为了突出主句中的“旗帜”is，通常将主语从句放在句子的后面，并用 it 代替其原先的位置，it称做形式主语。在这种情况下，连词 that 通常不省。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>主语</th>
<th>系</th>
<th>表语（表语从句）</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My idea is that we will go to the Great Wall on Sunday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>我的意思是星期天我们去长城。</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
孙老师提示:
从上面的句子可以看出将一个完整的句子置于表语的位置，便称为表语从句，也就是说，从词序的角度看称其为主语、表语、宾语从句。
主语从句、表语从句以及宾语从句在句子中所占的位置是名词的位置，所以称它们为名词性从句，也就是说，从词性的角度看称其为名词性从句。

孙老师提示:
由连词if, whether 引导的名词性从句也是完整的句子，所不同的是 that 在句子中没有实际意思，可以省略，而 if, whether 因为有是否的意思，故不可省略。

阅读与欣赏

I slept and dreamed [that life was beauty].

I woke and found [that life was duty].

Never forget [that the most powerful force on earth is love].

不要忘了，世界上最强大的力量是爱情。

Experience proves [that most time is wasted, not in hours, but in minutes].

经验证明，大部分时间都是被一分钟一分钟地而不是一小时一小时地浪费掉的。

由连接代词who, whom, what, which, whose, how much, how many引导的名词性从句

上面列出的连接代词代替从句中的名词或修饰名词的词, 有实际词义，不能省略。

who -------------- 人（主格，也可用于宾格）
whom ------------ 人（只用于宾格）
what -------------- 物（主格或宾格）
which ------------ 哪一个（名词的定语）
whose ------------ 谁的（名词的定语）
how many(much) 多少(代替名词或做名词的定语)
LESSON FOURTEEN

孙老师课堂·三句通·简单英语

1. 你相信那个从英国来的贼去年在北京市偷了好多自行车吗?
2. 昨天医生告诉我,我们老师可能要死了。
3. 你知道你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天为什么要偷你们老师的钱包吗?
4. 昨天他告诉我,明年他会挣多少钱。
5. 我不相信你们班长明天会来。
6. 昨天,他告诉我他在王府井大街买了什么。
7. 你知道昨天是谁的妹妹咬了我吗？

孙老师提示:

请同学们务必要自己做一下下面的练习，然后再听老师讲解。基本句型掌握得好不好将直接影响到高考作文分数的高低。我们发现很多好学生写出的句子同样存在着大量的错误，请同学们注意改正，避免在高考中丢分。

1. 你相信那个从英国来的贼去年在北京市偷了好多自行车吗？
2. 昨天医生告诉我，我们老师可能要死了。
3. 你知道你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天为什么要偷你们老师的钱包吗？
4. 昨天他告诉我，明年他会挣多少钱。
5. 我不相信你们班长明天会来。
6. 昨天，他告诉我他在王府井大街买了什么。
7. 你知道昨天是谁的妹妹咬了我吗？
第二节  开放作文（满分15分）

请根据下面提示，写一篇短文。词数不少于50。

Xiao Ming tells you that he had 100 yuan yesterday morning, which he put into the pocket of his jacket. He spent 40 yuan yesterday afternoon. But now when he reaches into the pocket of his jacket, he finds only 10 yuan.

He is wondering what has happened to the rest of the money. As his friend, you suggest to him three or four different possibilities concerning the missing money.

孙老师特别提示:

从面授的学生情况看，写作的失败在于基本功太差。请同学们有时间多看看前几课。万丈高楼平地起，千万不可忽视基础，任何复杂的文章都是从简单开始，我们在以后的教学中将带你逐渐地将往年的考卷都做一遍，希望大家用心体会——什么样的文章是好文章。

学英语，学它的什么？

◆语音是语言的载体；文字是语言的固化。
◆元音是单词的心脏；语调是语言的乐章。
◆单词是句子的砖石；句子是篇章的构件。
◆语意是句子的灵魂；语序是句子的程式。
◆名词是句子的主帅；动词是句子的生命。
◆冠词是名词的冠冕，不可或缺，如影随形。
◆定语是名词的衣饰，衣饰要华美。
◆状语是动词的侍从，侍从要众多。
◆介词、连词、关系引导词是词句之间的桥梁，桥梁要畅通。
正确而巧用句型是美言美文的真谛，英语学习的极致。

本课要点

孙老师特别提示：

在学习名词性从句时，下例几点必须向学生反复强调。

1、理解名词性从句的性质非常重要——从词性的角度看，我们称之为名词性从句。从词序的角度看，我们称之为主语从句，表语从句、宾语从句。

2、在进行中英文互译的时候，要特别注意中英文的不同点。

例如：

主语从句：
你爱的那个人 就是我爱的那个。
Who you love is who I love.

表语从句：
那个人 是 我爱的那个人。
is who I love.

3、名词性从句不过是根据需要将三个基本句型中的名词变成一个完整的句子，三个基本句型又重新排列。

4、英国人思维方式的根本是——什么重要什么放在前面。因此，无论用什么连词，该连词一定要放在从句的句首，如该连词是做定语，要连同所修饰的名词一起放在从句句首。

5、宾语从句的词序是陈述句词序，决不能用疑问句的词序。如需提问，应将主句变化成疑问句，而不是从句！

6、比较中文的名词性从句与英文的名词性从句的异同。

7、牢记名词性从句的连词。

连词

that ———— 引导完整的句子
if ———— 引导完整的句子（是否）
whether ———— 引导完整的句子（是否）

连接代词

who ———— 人（主格，也可用于宾格）
whom ———— 人（只用于宾格）
what ———— 物（主格或宾格）
which ———— 哪一个（名词的定语）
whose ———— 谁的（名词的定语）
how many(much) ——— 多少（代替名词或做名词的定语）
LESSON FIFTEEN

名词性从句 (2)

导言
掌握了三个句型就已经掌握了名词性从句。名词性从句不难, 但要熟练地应用并不是一件简单的事情, 本课准备了大量练习, 希望同学们认真完成, 这是高考高分的保障。

由连接副词 where, when, why, how 引导的名词性从句

孙老师提示:
上面列出的连接副词代替从句中副词或介词短语, 有实际意义, 在从句中做状语, 不能省略。

- where ------------ 地点
- when ------------ 时间
- why -------------- 原因
- how -------------- 方式

宾语从句

- He told me that he studied English hard in the university to go abroad five years ago.
  他告诉我, 五年前他在大学时, 为了出国而努力学习英语。

孙老师提示:
注意上面 that 引导的宾语从句中划线部分, 如该部分不明确时, 我们就用不同的连接副词来代替并放在句首。

注意下面句子的变化和连接副词的位置。

- He told me how he studied English in the university to go abroad five years ago.
- He told me where he studied English hard to go abroad five years ago.
- He told me why he studied English hard in the university five years ago.
- He told me when he studied English hard in the university to go abroad.

孙老师提示:
我们同样可以把带有连接副词的句子放在主语或表语的位置上, 称为主语从句或表语从句。

- 主语 系 表语从句
  - how we can get so much money.

- 主语从句
  - where he got the news.

78
当主语是 this, that, it 时，常用 because 引导表语从句。

—Women live longer than men after retirement.
—Yes, that is because women can continue to do something that they used to do.

一、汉译英
1、我忘记我在什么地方见过他。
2、你想要的东西就是我想要的东西。
3、明天我们是否飞上海取决于天气。（depend on）

二、英译汉
1、The house is what I want to buy next year.
2、Who told you I bought a BMW?
3、Who is to be our English teacher? I don’t know.
4、I don’t know if he has a copy or not.
5、I don’t know why rats love rice—this is very clear.

英文书面表达注意事项
1. 注意英语的三个句子，举什么旗子不要错，不要丢。
2. 注意时态。
3. 注意句子的肯定、否定及疑问形式，别忘了问号。
4. 注意定语的位置。
5. 小心单数复数和冠词。
6. 注意连词的用法。

孙老师特别提示：
LESSON FIFTEEN

课堂练习（4）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1. We were not surprised at ______, for he had worked so hard.
   A. what has he achieved                            B. that what he had achieved
   C. what he had achieved                            D. that he had achieved

2. ______ I saw was two men crossing the street.
   A. What                    B. Whom                   C. Who                      D. That

3. Mary found it difficult to talk calmly about ______ she had experienced at the station.
   A. which                   B. what                      C. why                      D. where

4. ______ was not the way the event happened.
   A. Which the press reported                        B. That the press reported
   C. What did the press report                        D. What the press reported

5. No one doubts ______ it is true.
   A. whether                B. if                           C. that                        D. what

6. The old gentleman never fails to help _____ is in need of his help.
   A. whom                   B. who                      C. whoever                D. whomever

7. ______ was unimportant.
   A. Whether he enjoyed our dinner or not
   B. No matter how he enjoyed our dinner
   C. If he enjoyed our dinner
   D. What he enjoyed our dinner

8. How long do you think _____ to finish this urgent task?
   A. did it take you                                        B. it will take you
   C. will it take you                                       D. it to take you
1. 问题是我们怎样才能搞到那么多的钱。
2. 谁是我们的朋友，谁是我们的敌人（enemy），是革命的首要问题。
3. 他想要的东西就是一辆汽车。
4. 他是否会拒绝（refuse）我，不清楚。
5. 他明天通过考试没有问题。
6. 我不知道那个从英国来的老师喜欢谁的妹妹。
7. 昨天是谁的狗咬了你，不清楚。
8. 明天他是否会参加那个舞会 (ball)，没人知道。
9. 这房子正是他最需要的东西。
10. 我很高兴地得知他去年挣了一百万美元 (one million dollars)。
11. 我很遗憾地听说你丢了一百万美元。
12. 你知道你们班长为什么要杀我吗?
13. 你相信你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天尿炕了？

用适当连词——连接代词和副词填空。
1. ___seems easy to some people seems difficult to others.
2. ___the flight will take off is not certain.
3. Asia is no longer___it used to be.
4. Do you know___the nearest grocery store is?
5. Ask him___it cost.
6. The teacher asked us___we had done the experiment or not.
7. As I didn’t know the way, he told me___we could get there.
8. Tell me___car you want to buy.
9. Who told you___she had broken her leg last month?
10. Do you know___sister he wants to marry?
11. I don’t understand___he is often late for school.
12. The important thing is we should find out___we failed in the experiment.
13. ___it rains or not tomorrow, makes no difference to me.
14. I think it is___you eat too much.
LESSON FIFTEEN

孙老师课堂· 三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

本课要点

1. 比较中文的名词性从句与英文的名词性从句的异同。
2. 牢记名词性从句的连词。

课堂练习（6）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

完成下列句子。

1. ________________（他是否知道这个消息）is not known.
2. I wonder ________________________（下学期哪位老师教我们数学）.
3. I forget ________________（我在什么地方什么时候遇见过他）.
4. We judge a person not by ________________________（他说些什么）but by______________________（他做些什么）.
5. The point is ________________（我们究竟是否要做这项工作）.
6. That is exactly ________________________（我们需要的东西）.
7. ________________（他是否会拒绝邀请）is unknown.
8. ________________________（我们是否举行这次比赛）remains uncertain.
9. ________________（他们怎么能做这么多工作）is interesting to us all.
10. ________________________（我们什么时候开会）depends on you.
11. ________________________（他说的话）filled me with joy.
12. It is said ________________________（他的数学考试及格了）.
13. ________________________（他恢复得这么快）was a miracle.
14. It is believed ________________________（汤姆是我们班最好的学生）.
15. My idea is ________________________（你最好和我一起去听讲座）.
16. The question is ________________________（我们如何在没有任何帮助的情况下把这件事做好）.
17. Everybody was surprised at ________________（他所做的事情）.
18. This reminds me of ________________________（我们在假日共同做的事情）.
19. I’m not sure ________________________（我是否有一份抄本）.
20. It seems that no one knew______（发生了什么事）.

本课要点

1. 比较中文的名词性从句与英文的名词性从句的异同。
2. 牢记名词性从句的连词。
有人曾形象地指出，英文的表达方式像葡萄，是一串一串的，中文像竹子，是一节一节的，也就是说英文中一个大句子往往套着一个或几个小句子，中文却一句句地表达。所以在英汉互译时注意这一语言差异，对掌握英语很有帮助。

孙老师特别提示：

定语从句是将定语扩大成一个完整的句子，由关系代词或副词引导，放在所要修饰的名词之后，通常称被修饰的名词为先行词。

- 他是从美国来的英语老师。
  He is an English teacher from America.
  先行词——关系代词

- 他 是 那个下学期要教 我们 的 英文老师。
  He is an English teacher who will teach us next term.
  先行词——关系代词在从句中做主语

- 这 就 是 我们老师写 的 那 本 书。
  This is the book which (that) was written by our teacher.
  先行词——关系代词在从句中做主语

形容词 介词短语

- 形容词 介词短语

- 主系定语从句表语

- 定语从句

- 先行词 关系代词在从句中做主语

- 先行词 关系代词在从句中做主语

- 先行词 关系代词在从句中做主语

- 先行词 关系代词在从句中做主语

- 定语从句

- 关系代词在从句中做主语
LESSON SIXTEEN

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 你昨天见到的那个女孩是我们老师的女朋友。
2. 你们照顾的那个老太太去年死了。
3. 你昨天捡到的那个钱包是我们老师的。
4. 他们正在建的那座大楼是我们的新图书馆。
5. 你想娶的那个女孩是个贼。
6. 在厕所前面吃包子的女孩是谁？
7. 我昨天丢的那个钱包就在我们班长的包里。
8. 我刚买的那辆宝马被人偷了。
9. 一个知道怎样做的人将会找到一份工作，一个知道为什么这样做的人将是老板。

关系代词whose的用法

whose

● 这就是那个男孩，他父亲是个飞行员。

This is the boy whose father is a pilot.

先行词 关系代词在从句中做father的定语=the boy’s
who's

- You know that girl whose father is our teacher?

**Barbara's father is my teacher.**

**Subject from clause**

Do you know the girl whose father is our teacher?

**Subject from clause**

先行词 关系代词在从句中做father的定语=the girl's father

### Relative pronouns after prepositions

孙老师提示:

有时关系代词在从句中不是做动词的宾语而是做介词的宾语。在这种情况下，通常有几种表达方式。

- 我认识你们谈论的那个人。
  
  **Subject from clause**

I know the man whom (who/that) you are talking about.

先行词 关系代词在从句中做介词about的宾语

注：关系代词做介词about的宾语，about被保留在句尾时，关系代词可以用whom, who或that，也可以省略。我们也可以将about放在关系代词whom之前。

注：当about放在whom之前时，whom不能被省略，也不能用who或that代替whom。请看例句:

- 这就是你正在找的女孩吗？
  
  Is this the girl whom (who/that) you are looking for?
  
  Is this the girl for whom you are looking?

###必须使用关系代词that的几种情况

1. 先行词被形容词最高级修饰。
   - This is the worst book that I have read.
   - He is the tallest man that I know.

2. 先行词是all, everything, nothing, something等不定代词。
LESSON SIXTEEN

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

He told me **all that** he knew.

3. 当先行词被only, any, no, very, little或序数词修饰时。
   - That is **the only way that** leads into the mountain.
   - Who is **the first student that** came here?

注：上面3种情况不能使用who, whom, which等关系代词。
   当that在从句中做宾语时，可以省略。

定语从句与同位语从句的区别

- The news **that** she is going to marry an American is surprising.
  她要嫁给一个美国人的消息令人吃惊。
  注：句中的that是连词，在从句中没有语法成分。该句与news并列，是同位语从句。

- The news **that** he told me is not true.
  他告诉我的那个消息不是真的。
  注：句中that是关系代词，在从句中做told的宾语，引导的是定语从句。

课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 你能找到你出生的那个房子吗？
2. 我不喜欢你买的那辆汽车。
3. 你能把那本字典给我吗？就是皮是红色的那本。
4. 他就是那个英语说得很好，个子最高的男生。
5. 你就是我一直在找的那个女孩子。

本课要点

1. 定语从句是将定语扩大成一个完整的句子。
2. 牢记引导定语从句的连词。
LESSON SEVENTEEN

定语从句（2）

导言
在学习定语从句时，请注意关系代词和关系副词的区别，关系代词在从句中起到的是名词的作用，而关系副词起到的是副词或介词短语的作用，即状语的作用。

关系副词

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>关系副词</th>
<th>作用</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>代替时间</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>代替地点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td>代替原因</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When

- I will never forget the day. **On the day**, my father died.
- I will never forget the day **when** my father died.

先行词 关系副词在从句中做状语

从以上的例句中可以看出，关系副词在从句中代替的是一个介词短语，相当于 **on the day**，做状语。该句也可以用关系代词来做。请注意关系代词与关系副词的区别。

- I will never forget the day **on which** my father died.
- I will never forget the day **which** my father died on.

Where

- Look at the house. **In the house**, I was born.
- Look at the house **where** I was born.

注：where在从句中充当状语，代替 **in the house**，该句也可以用关系代词来做。

- Look at the house **in which** I was born.
- Look at the house **which** I was born in.

Why

- I know the reason. She is unhappy **for the reason** today.
LESSON SEVENTEEN

孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

引导定语从句，先行词可以是一个名词，也可以是一个短语或一个句子。as本身含有“像”的意思，而从句的位置不一定要在先行词之后

- The earth moves around the sun, as you know.
  
  (As you know, the earth moves around the sun.)

- There are only two families in the world, as a grandmother of mine used to say, the rich and the poor.
  
  正如我的一位祖母说过的那样，这个世界上只有两家人：那就是富人和穷人。
  ——西班牙小说家 塞万提斯 M.

- Money is the sinews (支柱) of love, as of war.
  
  As = Money is the sinews

  金钱是爱情的支柱，犹如金钱是战争的支柱一样。

- Love is ever the beginning of knowledge, as of fire is of light.
  
  As = ever the beginning

  知识总是从爱好开始，犹如光总是从火开始一样。

非限定性定语从句

当定语从句与所定的名词在意思上并不十分紧密时，通常使用非限定性定语从句，也就是说在先行词与定语从句之间加“，”。这种句子在汉语中我们习惯用两句话表达，而英语习惯用非限定性定语从句表达：

- China, whose population is the largest in the world, lies in East Asia.
  
  中国位于东亚，它是世界上人口最多的国家。

注：如译成China lies in East Asia and its population is the largest in the world，就不如上面例句好。正如前面一课导言中所说：英文的表达方式像葡萄，而汉语像竹子。在阅读中应多注意两种语言的差异。
孙老师特别提示：
不能用that作为关系代词的两种情况：①非限定性定语从句；②介词+关系代词。

课堂演示

汉译英
1、大不列颠位于西北欧，它的官方名字是大不列颠及北爱尔兰联合王国。
   Britain, whose official name is the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, lies in Northwest Europe.

2、我永远忘不了我们共同生活和学习的那个秋天。
   I shall never forget the fall when (in which) we lived and studied together.

3、你知道他为什么不来的原因吗？
   Do you know the reason why (for which) he didn’t come?

4、我讨厌上一个假期我们住的那个旅馆。
   I hate the hotel where (in which) we stayed last vacation.

5、他告诉我，他要去美国的日子。
   He told me the day when (on which) he would go to America.

6、学生们正在学习商务英语，它对将来工作很有用。
   The students are learning Business English that will be useful for their future work.

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、她就是那个到明年年底，会攒一万美元的那个女孩。
2、你认识那个警察一直在找的小偷吗？
3、昨天他告诉我，是谁吃了我的苹果，那个苹果是我妈妈给我买的。
4、自从她出生以来她就从未见过她爸爸。
5、她昨天告诉我，自从去年她见到她父亲，就再也没有见过了。
6、你知道你们班长喜欢的那个女孩是贼吗？
7、这个公寓在王府井大街的一个大楼里，它离学校不远。
8、我在英国学习五年之后，于1995年回国，当时我想在贵公司工作。
LESSON SEVENTEEN

课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

用适当的关系词填空。必要时可以用介词+关系代词的形式。
1. There was no definite reason ____ she should do so.
2. This is the reason ____ she did so.
3. The fact ____ the money has gone does not mean it was stolen.
4. There is a real danger ____ oxford will not retain its world position.
5. Beijing, ____ was the capital of China for more than 800 years, is rich in cultural and historic relics (文物).
6. Which was the college ____ was recommended to you?
7. That’s the same man ____ asked for help yesterday.
8. Who ____ you have ever seen can beat him in chess?
9. His view is shared by those ____ get little extra money but ____ jobs are much tougher (沉重).
10. I would like to live in places ____ trees are green all the year round.
11. I know the young with glasses on, ____ father is leaving for London.
12. There are thirty students in Class B, many of ____ come from the North.
13. He is reading a book, the name of ____ I don’t know.
14. He kept complaining about everything, ____ really annoyed everyone.
15. Marry was very patient with the children, ____ her husband seldom was.
16. All ____ you have to do is to press the button.
17. This is the only man ____ can do this job.
18. The first thing ____ we should do is to fulfill the task as early as possible.
19. I have never said such things ____ you did.
20. ____ is mentioned above, the molecules (分子) move faster when they are heated.

课堂练习（3）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

选择
1. In fact, he did not understand the question ____ was asked in English.
   A. where                B. who                     C. which                 D. in which

2. Taiwan is, ____ you know, an inseparable (不可分割的) part of china.
   A. which                B. that                     C. as                      D. where

3. The girl to ____ I’m sending the letter is my former classmate.
   A. what                 B. whom                    C. who                      D. which

4. I’m sorry to hear the news ____ her son had died.
A. that                        B. what                     C. as                          D. which

5. This is an English book, ____ anyone can see.
   A. what                     B. which                   C. that                        D. as

6. I will never forget the day of last month ____ I joined the Army.
   A. in which B. on which C. on that D. on when

7. ____ discussed before, copper seldom is used in its pure form except in the electrical industry.
   A. What                     B. Which                   C. That                        D. As

8. They promised to help us, ____ we were thankful.
   A. for it                    B. for whom              C. for which               D. for that

9. We should do our homework ____ the teacher told us.
   A. which                        B. as                          C. that                        D. what

10. Tom, ____ you all know, can dance very well.
    A. who                      B. as                         C. that                         D. which

11. Tell me everything ____ you know.
    A. about that            B. which                    C. that                        D. what

12. It is the largest plane ____ I have ever seen.
    A. it                          B. which                    C. of that                    D. that

13. I don’t think there is anything difficult in our life ____ could prevent us from learning.
    A. which                   B. what                     C. who                        D. that

14. Who is the man ____ have eaten up my cake.
    A. who                     B. whom                    C. that                        D. which

15. The boy climbed the hill, ____ they picnicked.
    A. on its top                                               B. on whose top
    C. on the top of it                                       D. on the top of that

16. ____ In the class, the teacher mentioned some authors and their books were unknown to us.
    A. who and which     B. that                        C. who                         D. which

17. There are some students in your class ____ the teacher wants to talk about.
    A. whom                 B. where                    C. which                        D. whose
18. He does ____ I tell him.
   A. as  B. which  C. when  D. how

19. All ____ glitters (闪光) is not gold.
   A. which  B. that  C. when  D. where

20. Tell me the reason ____ you are so angry.
   A. that  B. of which  C. why  D. of that

21. Since 1978 she has painted over 300 pictures, some ____ have been reproduced (登载) in the china Daily.
   A. what  B. that  C. of that  D. of which

22. I don’t like to live in the room ____ faces west.
   A. which window  B. its window  C. where  D. the window of which

23. The city is not the same one ____ it used to be.
   A. as  B. who  C. that  D. which

24. Do you know the museum ____ my mother visited.
   A. where  B. which  C. in which  D. when

25. Is ____ you want to say?
   A. that all  B. all that  C. as  D. all what

26. ____ he expected, Alfred Bloggs was a dustman.
   A. Which  B. What  C. That  D. As

27. ____ he arrived punctually.
   A. As expected  B. As it was expected  C. What was expected  D. That was expected

28. You know ____ you have done.
   A. when  B. where  C. what  D. whether

29. ____ is often said, a fly even has its anger.
   A. That  B. Which  C. It  D. As

30. ____ I want to buy a car which is as good as the one ____
   A. that you bought it him  B. you bought him.
31. The goals ____ he had fought all his life no longer seemed important to him.
   A. after which  B. for which  C. with which  D. at which

32. Helen was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others, ____ of course, made the others jealous.
   A. who  B. that  C. what  D. which

33. Language is a city, to the building of ____ every human being brought a stone.
   A. which  B. that  C. it  D. this

34. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, ____ is often the case in other countries.
   A. as  B. what  C. so  D. that

35. The course normally attracts 20 students per year, ____ up to half will be from overseas.
   A. in which  B. for whom  C. with which  D. of whom

36. A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region, ____ were surprising.
   A. as results  B. which results  C. the results of it  D. the results of which

37. I’ve never been to Beijing, but it’s the place ____.
   A. that I want to visit it most  B. in which I’d like to visit  C. where I’d like to visit  D. I most want to visit

38. Would the news ____ he failed to pass the exam bother you?
   A. which  B. that  C. of which  D. on which

39. The fact ____ he does so in so short period of time challenges explanation.
   A. why  B. that  C. what  D. which

本课要点
1. 掌握关系副词的用法，关系副词起的是副词或介词短语的作用，即状语的作用。
2. 掌握as的用法，先行词可以是一个名词，也可以是一个短语或一个句子，as本身含有“像”的意思，而从句的位置不一定要在先行词之后。
3. 掌握非限定性定语从句。
状语从句

状语从句是将以前学过的主谓宾状句型中的状语扩大成一个完整的句子，并用连词引导。准确掌握每一个连词的含义是掌握状语从句的关键。同时要注意主从句时态呼应。

导言

状语从句是将以前学过的主谓宾状句型中的状语扩大成一个完整的句子，并用连词引导。准确掌握每一个连词的含义是掌握状语从句的关键。同时要注意主从句时态呼应。

▲ 时间状语从句

引导时间状语从句的连词有 when、while、as、the moment、before、after、till、until、since、as soon as 等。请注意 when, while, as 的区别。

when — 1、当……的时候 通常指某一特定的时间,主句与从句的动作同时发生。

1. when I opened the window, I saw him come up.

2. when I was eight I began to study English.

3. when I have time I will go to see you.

4. He said he would tell her about it when he saw her.

孙老师提示:

如果时间状语从句中, 主从句都是将来(过去将来)的动作, 英语习惯上主句用将来时(过去将来), 从句用一般时(一般过去时)。

when — 2、正在……的时候,突然……。通常主句是进行时或 to be about to 时, 在翻译的时候, when 可以译成没想到或突然。

1. I was walking along the street, when I met him. 我正在街上走突然遇见了他。

2. One evening, little Hans was sitting near the fire when he heard a loud knock at the door. 一天晚上,小汉斯正坐在火炉旁,突然听到有人使劲敲门。

3. I was about to fall asleep when my sister came in. 我刚睡着, 我妹妹就进来了。

when — 3、当从句是进行时, 主句是一般时, 往往表示不满。

1. Someone knocked at the door when I was having breakfast. 我在吃早饭的时候, 真烦人, 有人敲门。
2. When I **was leaving** the house, the postman arrived.
   我刚要离开, 邮递员偏偏来了。

3. Tom _______ into the house when no one ________.
   A. slipped; was looking  B. had slipped; looked
   C. slipped; had looked  D. was slipping; looked
   答案: A 当when引导的从句是进行时, 主句的动作有一种不满的情绪, 这句话应该译成: 当没有人注意他时候, 他却偷偷地溜进来了。

孙老师提示:

**while -- 1.** 在……期间  往往指一段时间。

1. While we were in America, we saw him twice.
   我们在美国期间, 见过他两次。

2. While we were talking, he came in.
   我们正说着话, 他来了。

**while -- 2.** 表示一种不满情绪  意思是这边在干某种重要的事, 而另一边在享受等。

1. We are cleaning the classroom while they are playing football.
   我们这儿在打扫教室而他们在踢足球。

2. The soldier faces the powder while the beauty powders the face.
   前方吃紧, 后方紧吃。 (战士面对炸药, 美人在往脸上擦粉。)

**as -- 1.** 一边……一边, 随着

1. She was doing her homework as she was listening to the music.

2. As she grew older, she became more beautiful.

**as -- 2.** 当……时  指一个动作紧接着一个动作发生, 从句通常用进行时。 (不能用when因为两个动作不是同时发生)

1. As I **was going** out, it began to rain.
   我刚要出去, 天就下雨了。

2. I saw Mary as she was getting on the bus.
   玛丽刚要上车, 我就看到她。

3. As he **was eating** his breakfast, he heard someone knock at the door.
   他正在吃早饭的时候听见有人敲门。

4. Someone patted me on the shoulder as I was standing before the shop window.

注: 练习1是针对 when, as, while用法上的区别设计, 请在做练习时多加注意。
the moment — 一……就…… (=as soon as)

– Did you remember to give Mary the money you owed her?
  – Yes, I gave it to her the moment I saw her.
  – 你还记得你把欠玛丽的钱给她了吗？
  – 我一见她的时候就给她了。

not...until -- 直到……才

He didn’t leave the office until he finished the work.
直到他干完工作，才离开办公室。

=He left the office when he finished the work.

Before -- 在……之前

1. The passengers should arrive at the airport an hour before the flight departs.

2. Did you work as a stewardess before you came to this company?

After -- 在……之后

1. The customer left the ticket counter after he had a quarrel with the ticket agent.

2. The plane took off after the air traffic controller gave clearance.

Since -- 自从……通常主句用现在完成时

1. I have never been there again since I graduated from the university.

2. The captain has traveled almost everywhere in the world since he became a pilot.

as soon as -- 一……就……

1. Jack went to school as soon as he got well.
  杰克病一好就去上学了。

2. As soon as you feel too old to do a thing, do it.

   —M. Deland, American writer

   一旦你觉得做某件事年纪太大了，赶紧做它。

   ——美国作家 迪兰 . M

no sooner—than -- 一……就……

No sooner had he arrived than he went away again.
他刚回家就走了。

注：no sooner than 要求倒装。
LESSON EIGHTEEN

▲ 条件状语从句

引导条件状语从句的连词有 if, unless(=if not), as(so)long as, in case, provided(that), on condition that 等等。

if -- 如果
1. If you don’t hurry up, you will miss the plane.
2. If it snows tomorrow, the flight will be canceled.

unless -- 如果不, 除非 =if not
1. He will not join us unless he changes his mind.
   = He will not join us if he does not change his mind.
2. We cannot get there on time unless we book the earliest flight.
   = We cannot get there on time if we don’t book the earliest flight.
3. Don’t trouble trouble unless trouble troubles you.

注：练习3是专为unless设计。

as(so) long as -- 只要
1. We will succeed as long as we keep on trying.
2. You can play the game as long as you remember the rules.
3. A man is not old as long as he is seeking something.
   A man is not old until regrets take the place of dreams.
   一个人还有所追求，他就没有老。
   直到后悔取代了梦想，一个人才算老。

as(so) far as -- 据……所知
As far as I know, he speaks English very well.

in case -- 假使, 如果
The plane can not take off in case it rains.

provided that -- 如果 有时省略that
1. The plane will be in good condition provided that it is taken care of carefully.
2. You can become a stewardess provided that you are in good shape (好体型) and you have got the proper education.
on condition that -- 条件是

1. He said that he would come to the meeting on condition that no one asked him to speak.

2. The mother promised to the son to buy him a toy airplane on condition that he passes his English test.

注：如果主从句的动作发生在将来，则主句用将来时，从句用一般时。
例：(1) If he arrives tomorrow, I will be waiting for him at the airport.
(2) He said he would not leave unless it was fine next day.

▲ 地点状语从句
地点状语从句只有两个连词: where和wherever.

where -- 在……的地方

1. Put the medicine where you can easily get it.

2. Where that high building stands, there used to be some low, dilapidated (荒废的) houses.

3. Where there is a flatterer (拍马屁的人) there is also a fool.
   —Joseph Addison, British writer
   哪里有拍马屁的人，那里就有傻瓜。

wherever -- 无论哪里

1. He follows her wherever she goes.

2. Wherever you are, I will be right there waiting for you.

▲ 原因状语从句
Because、as、since、now(that)、in that和for，这5个连词都用于表示原因，但在语气上一个比一个弱。

because -- 因为，通常从句放在主句之后。

1. Mr. Smith was very upset because he couldn’t find his luggage.

2. He said that he couldn’t work because the computer was out of order.

3. I succeeded because I willed it; I never hesitated (踌躇)。
   我成功是因为我有决心，从不踌躇。——法国皇帝 拿破仑 B.

as -- 因为，通常放在句首。

1. As it is quite windy today, he decides to take the bus in stead of riding a bicycle.

2. As he is honest and modest (谦虚)，all his friends like him.
**LESSON EIGHTEEN**

**since** -- 既然 因语气较弱，常译成既然。

1. *Since* everybody has come, we can set off.

2. *Since* the purser didn’t tell us what to do, we can relax.

**now that** -- 既然

1. *Now that* you are here, you can join us.

2. *Now that* all airlines offer discount prices, we should do the same.

**for** -- 因为 for表示的原因是大家都知到的，语气很弱，不用于句首，常译成众所周知。

1. Don’t bother him with your silly questions any more *for* you know he is very exhausted.

2. You have every reason to blame him *for* it is not the first time that he is late for class.

**▲ 结果状语从句**

引导结果状语的连词有: *so...that*、*so that*、*such...that*。

**so...that** -- 太……以至于 so后面应用形容词或副词，有时省略so，只用that。

1. Boeing747 is *so large* that people like to call it ‘jet jumbo’.

2. The flight scheduled *so early* that nobody wanted to book on it.

**so that** -- 因而，以便，为了 有时so可以省去。

1. Can you move your luggage a little bit away *so that* I can put mine in the overhead bin too?

2. Speak louder please *so that* the people at the back can hear you.

3. When you are skinning your customers, you should leave some skin on to grow *so that* you can skin them again.

——Nikita Khrushchev, Statesman of the former Soviet Union

如果你要剥客户的皮，你应当给他们留点皮，别剥光，让它长新皮，这样你下次还可以继续剥他们的皮。

——前苏联政治家 赫鲁晓夫 N.

**such...that** -- 太……以至于，用法与so...that相同，但such后面应用名词。

1. The foreign visitor was *such a fast* speaker that nobody could understand him.

2. The Canadian Airline’s hangar is *such a huge building* that it can hold two medium-range jets at the same time.
LESSON EIGHTEEN

\[\text{孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语}\]

▲ 比较状语从句

引导比较状语的连词有：as...as、not so(as)...as、...than、和the more...,the more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>as...as -- 像……一样</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If you don’t want to miss the flight, you need to be at the airport as early as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. My grandma told me that her eyesight was as good as 10 years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Cultivation (学习) to the mind is as necessary as food for the body.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

引导比较状语的连词有：as...as、not so(as)...as、...than、和the more...,the more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not so(as)...as -- 不像……</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The job is not so (as) difficult as I thought it would be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The flight was not so (as) harmful as the captain had predicted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

引导比较状语的连词有：as...as、not so(as)...as、...than、和the more...,the more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>...than -- 比……怎么样 用于事物间的比较，more后面用形容词或副词</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. People believe that being a stewardess is better than most of the other jobs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I personally think that the American movies are more interesting than Chinese ones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. A beautiful form is better than a beautiful face; a beautiful behavior than a beautiful form.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

—Ralph Waldo Emerson, American thinker

引导比较状语的连词有：as...as、not so(as)...as、...than、和the more...,the more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The more..., the more... -- 越……越……</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The more, the better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The more he listened to that song, the less he enjoyed it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The more things a man is ashamed of, the more respectable he is.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

—George Bernard Shaw, British dramatist

引导比较状语的连词有：as...as、not so(as)...as、...than、和the more...,the more...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in order that -- 为了</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Captain briefed his crew in order that everyone knew what to do during the long flight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. The Airline planned to offer discount prices **in order that** they would have some business in the low season.

**in case** 以防

1. Please take your umbrella **in case** it rains.

2. You should bring a dictionary **in case** you need it.

**lest** 以防万一

1. The man decided to tell his boss the fact **lest** he would be angry with him.

2. The manager of the workshop asked his staff to work overtime **lest** they wouldn’t finish the task on time.

注：lest引导的从句用**would**，**might**表示虚拟。

**for fear that** 以防万一，that可省略

1. The instructor emphasized on the issue three times **for fear that** the students did not pay enough attention to the problem.

2. The President of the Airline often talked with his employees **for fear that** they are not satisfied with his policy.

▲ 让步状语从句

引导让步状语从句的连词有：**although**、**as**、**even if**、**though**、**even though**、**however**、**no matter**、**whatever**、**while**和**whether**。

**although, though** 虽然although和though可以互换，但although常放在句首。though可以用于倒装。

1. **Although** it was raining, the plane managed to take off.

2. **Although** it was not his fault, he took all the blame.

3. **Though** he did his best, he didn’t succeed.

4. **Child** **though** he was, he did quite well.

**as** 尽管 **as**引导让步状语从句时，句子通常倒装。可与though互换。

1. **Busy** **as** he is, he never misses a football match.

2. **Hard** **as** she works, she makes little progress.
**even if** -- 即使

1. **Even if** you don’t like your boss, you should do your work.
2. **Even if** you are not fond of flowers, you shouldn’t miss the chrysanthemum exhibition.

**even though** -- 即使

1. **Even though** I might be wrong, I will go my way.
2. **Even though** his dean didn’t mean it, he still felt embarrassed.

**however** -- 不论  

1. He couldn’t get there on time **however fast** he drove.
2. The father couldn’t make his daughter smile **however hard** he tried.

**no matter (what, when, where, how)** -- 无论 (什么，何时，何地，怎样)

1. The old man wouldn’t believe anything **no matter what** you said.
2. Please tell me the result **no matter when** you get it.
3. He wouldn’t forgive me **no matter how** hard I begged him.
4. I will find you **no matter where** you hide.

**whatever** -- 不管

1. **Whatever** other people may say, she won’t change her mind.
2. **Whatever** you do, it won’t affect our plan.

**while** -- 尽管

1. **While** I have sympathy for you, I can’t help you.
2. **While** it’s none of my business, I will watch you.

**whether** -- 不管，常与 or not 连用

1. **Whether** he is good or not, the company decided to send him abroad.
2. **Whether** his proposal is practical or not, the department plans to adopt it.

**课堂演示**

Pumas（美洲狮）are large, cat-like animals **which** are found in America. **When reports** came into London Zoo that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously (当真). **However, as the evidence** (证据) began to accumulate (积累), experts from the Zoo felt obliged to (被迫) investigate (调查), for the descriptions (描述) (which were) given by people **who** claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily (非常) similar.
LEsson EIGHTEEN

www.teachersun.com

美洲狮是一种产于美洲的体形似猫的大型动物。当在伦敦南面45公里的地方发现美洲狮的报告传到伦敦动物园时，并没有受到足够的重视。然而，随着证据的积累，伦敦动物园的专家们不得不开始调查，这是因为，声称看到美洲狮的人所描述的情况极端相似。

孙老师提示:

掌握状语从句并不难，困难的是记住连词，尤其是常用连词。很多学生宁愿抱着高考常用词、四、六级常用词、托福常用词背，而忽略了英语的介词和连词，介词和连词是英语的结构词，是以一当百的词，务必请同学们牢记这些词。

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

请同学们自行牢记上面状语从句的连词之后再做下列练习，状语从句的连词是历年高考重点，切记。

1. No sooner had they got off the train_____ it started moving.
   A. When           B. than           C. then           D. after

2. It is very important for the strong man to know that _____ strong he is, he cannot be the strongest.
   A. whatever       B. whenever       C. whichever       D. however

3. _____ I admit that there are problems, I don’t agree that they cannot be solved.
   A. When           B. As             C. While          D. Since

4. We’ll be only too glad to attend your party _____ we can get a baby-sitter.
   A. so far as      B. provided that    C. unless          D. except that

5. _____ she finds out that you’ve lost her books.
   A. As if          B. Even if        C. What if        D. Suppose that

6. He talks as if he _____ everything in the world.
   A. knows          B. knew           C. had known       D. would have known

7. _____ you disagree with her, her idea is still worth considering. (1998年)
   A. Even if        B. If only        C. Instead of      D. Despite of

8. In short, _____ he lives, a man belongs to some society. (1997年)
   A. whatever       B. whenever       C. whichever       D. wherever

9. She has wanted to become a nurse _____ since she was a young girl. (1997年)
   A. long           B. often          C. always          D. ever

10. Rubber differs from plastics _____ it is produced naturally and not in file lab. (2005年)
    A. at that        B. in that       C. for that        D. with that
LESSON EIGHTEEN
www.teachersun.com

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

用when, as, while填空。
1. My mother was reading newspaper in the house ________ someone knocked at the door loudly.
2. ________ she grew older and older, she became more and more beautiful.
3. My sister was reading a book ________ she was listening to the music.
4. The driver was about to drive away ________ he saw a shoe drop on his car.
5. ________ there is life, there is hope.
6. ________ she was driving along the road, she saw something huge in front of her.
7. Please let us know ________ you are ready.
8. ________ you trust to the dog, the wolf slips into the sheepfold (羊圈)．
9. ________ the wind blows you must set your sail.
10. We took notes ________ we listened.

课堂练习（3）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

五、将括号中的汉语译成英文。
1. ________ (据我所知) the event took place in 1945.
2. I’ll go to the airport to pick him up ________ (如果我有空).
3. They want to climb to the top of the mountain ________ (不管山有多高).
4. Jack went back to work ________ (他的病一好).
5. The football match will be held tomorrow morning ________ (除非下雨).
6. My mother used to be an excellent dancer ________ (当她年轻的时候).
7. You may leave ________ (无论何时你喜欢).
8. Finish your job ________ (离开公司之前).
9. The Canadian instructor spoke so fast ________ (翻译跟不上他).
10. We’ll be late ________ (除非我们叫出租).
11. ________ (我们还没来得及坐下) than the film began.
12. You can’t improve your pronunciation ________ (除非你天天练习)．
13. We held a meeting ________ (以便把这件事彻底讨论一下).
14. The doctor went with us to the work-site ________ (以防出事故).
15. ________ (即使你主动提出要帮助他), he won’t accept it.
16. Lu Xun often said, “ ________ (只要我活着), I shall go on studying.”
17. He set out early ________ (为了能及时到达).
18. A lot of things have changed ________ (自从我们搬到新院址).
19. ________ (不论你在哪里) I will be right here waiting for you.
20. I can learn some new things from him ________ (每次我与他交谈).

本课要点
1. 状语从句是将以前学过的主谓宾状句型中的状语扩大成一个完整的句子，并用连词引导。
2. 准确掌握每一个连词的含义是掌握状语从句的关键。
3. 注意主从句时态呼应。
高考原卷单选分析

导言

在基础语法还未讲究的时候，先提前带同学们做一份高考原卷的单选，目的在于让大家重视基础，良好的基础是高考高分的保障。

课堂练习

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

普通高等学校招生全国统一考试

21. John promised his doctor he ________ not smoke. 题号？
   A. might        B. should        C. could        D. would.

22. —Have you read the book called Waiting for Anya?
    —Who ________ it?
   A. writes        B. has written   C. wrote        D. had written

23. —Did you return Fred’s call?
    —I didn’t need to ____ I’ll see him tomorrow.
   A. though        B. unless        C. when        D. because

24. _____ that she was going off to sleep, I asked if she’d like that little doll on her bed.
   A. Seeing        B. To see       C. See          D. Seen

25. It was hard for him to learn English in a family, in which _____ of the parents spoke the language.
   A. none          B. neither       C. both          D. each

26. After the long journey, the three of them went back home, ______.
   A. hungry and tiredly          B. hungry and tired
   C. hungrily and tiredly       D. hungrily and tired
LESSON NINETEEN

27. The hotel wasn’t particularly good. But I ____ in many worse hotels.
    A. was staying           B. stayed                    C. would stay            D. had stayed

28. I’ll give you a friend’s home address ______ I can be reached most evenings.
    A. which                    B. when                     C. whom                    D. where

29. No decision _____ about any future appointment until all the candidates have been
    interviewed.
    A. will be made       B. is made           C. is being made       D. has been made

30. The companies are working together to create _____ they hope will be the best means of
    transport in the 21st century.
    A. which                    B. that                       C. what                      D. who

31. –Did the book give the information you needed?
    –Yes. But _____ it, I had to read the entire book.
    A. to find                   B. find                       C. to finding              D. finding

32. I feel greatly honored ____ into their society.
    A. to welcome                                             B. welcoming
    C. to be welcomed                                      D. welcomed

33. If you really have to leave during the meeting, you’d better leave ____ the back door.
    A. for                         B. by                         C. across                    D. out

34. I’m sorry you’ve been waiting so long, but it’ll still be some time ____ Brian get back.
    A. before                   B. since                     C. till                         D. after

35. It is worth considering what makes “convenience” foods so popular, and ____ better ones of
    your own.
    A. introduces             B. to introduce       C. introducing               D. introduced
LESSON TWENTY

动词不定式（1）

导言
动词不定式是一种动词的非谓语形式，除不能做谓语外，它保留原动词的其它性质。根据动词的用法，可以有自己的宾语、双宾语、状语，也可带各种从句。加 to 的根本用意是区别于谓语动词——保证三种基本句型不乱。

不定式的构成

- to + do (动词原形)

动词不定式做主语

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：

- *To see *is to believe.*
  
  - 百闻不如一见。

- *To live *means to create.*
  
  - 生活意味着创造。

孙老师提示：

- 不定式做主语时，如果该不定式较长，通常用 it 做形式主语，不定式后置，其目的在于让该句的谓语动词（旗帜）尽可能地保持在句子前部。

  - To cross the continental United States by train takes 48 hours.
  
  - It takes 48 hours to cross the continental United States by train.

  坐火车横穿美国大陆要花48小时。

- It takes ten people to encircle the big tree.

  这株大树要10人才能环抱。

- To be proud of learning is the greatest ignorance.*

  ——美国作曲家 泰勒

孙老师提示：

- 动词不定式可以有自己的逻辑主语，即不定式动作的发出者，通常用 for + 名词（代词）或 of + 名词（代词），并放在不定式的前面。
It’s difficult for Tom to learn Chinese.
对汤姆来说学习中文很难。

It’s kind of you to say so.
谢谢你的美言。（你过奖了。）

It’s silly of him to do that.
他做那件事真是太傻了。

孙老师提示：

确定逻辑主语前是加of还是加for的办法是：如果表语可以修饰逻辑主语，即能说明逻辑主语的性质和特点，就加of引出逻辑主语，否则用for。

Tom is difficulty.
汤姆是困难的。

You are kind.

He is silly.

以上句中的 difficult不能修饰Tom，所以用for +名词（代词）做逻辑主语，而后两句中的 kind和silly可以修饰人，因此用of +名词（代词）。

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

用“of”或“for”填空。
1. It is important _______ you to use your time wisely.
2. It was brave _______ him to dive from the cliff.
3. It was thoughtful _______ him to bring us the raincoats.
4. It is necessary _______ some of you to get there earlier.
5. It’s better _______ you to go to bed earlier at night before the test.
6. It is good _______ you to offer your seat to the old man.
7. It is wrong _______ him not to prepare his lessons.

课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 从北京飞往上海要花两个小时。
2. 横穿美国坐火车要花40个小时。
3. 每天做家庭作业要花学生4个小时。
4. 对我爸爸来说每月挣一万块钱非常容易。
5. 对一个学生来说每天做家庭作业非常必要。
6. 你帮助我真是太好了。

动词不定式做表语

- His ambition (雄心，抱负) is to become a pilot.
- My job now is to teach English.

课堂练习（3）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 我们的职责(duty)就是努力学习。
2. 我的愿望是找份好工作。
3. 我要建议的是将会议推迟。
4. 帮助别人就是帮助自己。

动词不定式做宾语

1. 动词后接不定式做宾语完全是英语中的习惯用法，必须死记硬背，并且养成习惯。
   下面是一些常接不定式的动词： wish, like, hate, decide, afford, agree, learn, start, begin, love, claim, want, promise, hope, plan, prepare, intend, expect, fail 等。

- We want to win the match.
  我们想赢这场比赛。
- 我们想在比赛中取胜。

课堂练习（4）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 我希望能再度访问此地。
2. 她非常喜欢读书。
3. 司机没能及时看见另一辆车。
4. 汤姆拒绝借我他的车。
5. 我希望天黑前到那。
6. 这个女孩决定自己做决定。

2. 有些动词后面跟不定式时，可以在不定式前加 how, when, whether, why, where 等词，不定式句中做主语、宾语、表语、宾语补足语时也有出现。

- Do you know where to get the book?
- I began to learn how to cook when I was 18.
LESSON TWENTY
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

- Have you decided whether to go for an outing?
- Where to go is still a question.

孙老师提示：可以用于这种结构的动词有 ask, discover, explain, forget, imagine, tell, wonder, observe 等。

课堂练习（5）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
1、怎样搞到这么多钱还是个问题。
2、我知道到哪里能找到这个男孩。
3、问题是怎样学好英语。（作表语）
4、你最好弄清楚要把它放在哪里。
5、我问她如何学英语。

动词不定式做宾语后面跟补语时的用法
- I found to study English easy.
- I found it easy to study English.
形式宾语 宾补 不定式做宾语后置
- He made it a rule not to allow speaking Chinese in the class.
形式宾语 宾补 不定式做宾语后置
- He considers it very important for his students to study English grammar.
他认为让他的学生学英语语法很重要。

孙老师提示：不定式做宾语，后面带补语时须后置，用 it 做形式宾语。可以用于这种结构的动词有 think, consider, feel, find, choose, imagine, judge, declare, prove, report, select, understand 等。

课堂练习（6）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）
1、我发现学好英语很有用。
2、我们认为不告诉她是错误的。

动词不定式做宾语补语
- The commander ordered his men to get there on time.
主 谓 宾 不定式做宾语补语
- Her mother wants her to become a flight attendant.
主 谓 宾 不定式做宾语补语

110
孙老师提示：
在感官动词和一些表示让某人做某事的动词后应省略不定式的to，可以用于这种结构的动词有feel, hear, notice, see, have, help, let, make等。

- I didn’t hear anyone say anything about this matter.
- I’ve never made my son do what he doesn’t like to do.
- If you love me, let it be for naught, except for love’s sake (只为爱情) only.

如果你爱我，那就不要为了别的，而只为爱情。——英国诗人 勃朗宁．E．

注：当不定式做主语补语时to不可省。

- No one has heard him sing the song.
  He has never been heard to sing the song.

- Someone watched the children cross the streets.
  The children were watched to cross the streets.

课堂练习（7）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、父亲不让我们在街上玩耍。
2、我们相信他是有罪的。
3、我们认为汤姆是班上最好的学生之一。
4、他请我谈谈英语学习。
5、老师让他像这样说这个单词。
6、你能帮我搬这个重箱子吗？
7、我要让你看看如何做这件事。

小结

1、英语一句话只举一面旗子。
2、这面旗子永远是动词。
3、但在实际应用中，可能会出现多个动词，所以，一句话中只允许一个动词举旗子（即谓语动词），其他动词皆为非谓语动词。
4、我们学的第一种非谓语动词叫做动词不定式：to do sth.
5、当句子的主语也要用动词时，为了区别该句的谓语动词（旗帜）要在做主语的动词前加to构成动词不定式，如果该不定式较长，通常用it做形式主语，不定式后置，其目的在于让该句的谓语动词（旗帜）尽可能保持在句子前部。

本课要点

1、动词不定式做主语——通常见用it做形式主语，不定式后置，特别注意动词不定式的逻辑主语。
2、动词不定式做表语。
3、动词不定式做宾语——牢记常接不定式的动词（动词+to do）。
4、动词不定式做宾语补语——牢记不定式做宾语补语时省略to的动词。
1. 由定语从句省略而成的不定式。在这种情况下，不定式和它所定的名词在逻辑上是主谓关系。
   - Do you know the teacher who will teach us English next term?
     = Do you know the teacher to teach us English next term?
     你认识下学期要教我们英语的那位教师吗？
   - He is always the last one who leaves the office.
     = He is always the last one to leave the office.
     他总是最后一个离开办公室的人。

孙老师提示:
从上面的句子可以看出，不定式是从定语从句省略而来，但只有从句的动词发生在主句动词之后，或主从句的动词都是一般时的情况下才能用不定式代替定语从句。请看下面例句：
   - Do you know the teacher who taught Class Two English last term?
     你认识上个学期教二班英语的教师吗？

注：上面的例句不能用 to teach Class Two English last term 来代替。因为定语从句的动词发生在主句动词之前。

2. 在一些抽象名词之后常用不定式做定语。不定式和它所定的名词之间即无主谓关系，也无动宾关系，很像一个形容词或介词短语做定语。
   - He knows the best way to learn English.
     他知道学习英语的最好方法。
   - I had no chance to go to school when I was a boy.
     我小的时候没有上学的机会。
   - Success grows out of struggle to overcome difficulties.
     成功来之于克服困难的斗争。——英国作家 斯迈尔斯
   - Work while you work; play while you play; This is the way to be cheerful and gay.
     拼命地干，尽情地玩；如此这般，定能欢乐。

3. 不定式和它所定的名词之间在逻辑上是动宾关系，即所定的名词是不定式的宾语，如果不定式的动词是通过介词带宾语时，介词应保留在不定式之后。
   - I have a film to see.
     （to see的宾语就是film）
   - I have no room to live in.
     我没有房子住。

注：room是in的宾语，所以in应保留。
课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）
1、我妈妈告诉我，当我小时候，我们没有房子住。
2、每天做家庭作业，要花我90分钟时间。
3、我发现学开车很容易。
4、开车从我们家到学校，要花两个小时。
5、当我是个孩子的时候，我没有机会上学。
6、昨天我看见他偷你钱包了。
7、你认识要教我们数学的那个老师吗？
8、你还有很长的路要走。

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）
用不定式填空，注意可以省略“to”的动词。
1. I saw her____(take) the book.
2. I didn’t notice him____(enter) the room.
3. The worker taught us____(run) the machines when we worked in that factory.
4. You are not expected____(be) the top of the student in the class.
5. Her mother will not let her____(go) to the dance.
6. He was made____(work) twelve hours a day.
7. He was driven____(adopt) the proposal.
8. Was anyone seen____(go) out?
9. He helped me____(clean) the classroom.
10. His words enabled us____(know) the importance of studying English.

课堂练习（3）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）
1、学习英语对学生来说非常重要。
2、对一个中国人来说在美国挣钱非常困难。
3、你帮助你们班长，真傻。
4、对一个十岁的小孩来讲，在那条河里救起那个女孩真勇敢（brave）。
5、学习数学对我们来说非常必要（necessary）。
6、对于孙老师来说每月挣一百万（million）美元是不可能的。

本课要点
牢记不定式做定语的三种用法。
LESSON TWENTY TWO
动词不定式（3）

1. 动词不定式做状语时，通常只表示目的，有时在to前面加so as, in order用于强调。
   - To（In order to）master English, I have to work hard.
   - We eat to live, not live to eat.
   - To really understand a man we must judge him in misfortune.
     要真正了解一个人，需在不幸中考察他。——法国皇帝 拿破仑 B.

2. 不定式也可以表示结果，有时在to前加only。
   - He rushed to the airport only to find the airplane gone.
     他匆忙赶到机场，不料飞机已经起飞了。

3. 也可用too…to, so…as to, enough to表示结果。
   - Never too old to learn.
     活到老学到老。
   - You’re too young to do this job.
     你太年轻了，不能做这种工作。
   - The boy is old enough to go to school.
     这孩子到了上学的年纪了。

动词不定式的几种习惯用法

1. 在不定式前也可以加疑问词，如how, which, who, when等。
   - How to use infinitive（不定式）will be studied next week.
     如何使用不定式将在下周学习。
   - He can’t decide when to leave.
     他还不能决定什么时候离开。
LESSON TWENTY TWO

2. In the following adjectives as predicatives, they can be followed by an infinitive.

- glad, please, ready, eager, anxious, sorry, surprised, able, sure

- Are you ready to go now?
- I’m glad to see you.

3. An infinitive can express metaphorically, usually with as if, as though, meaning as if.

- He opened his mouth as if to say something.
  他张开嘴好像要说些什么。

Classroom Practice (1)

(For detailed explanation please log in to www.teachersun.com)

1. For a driver, it is necessary to understand cars.
2. I’m very glad to come to the airport to pick you up.
3. In order to buy a new bicycle, my father did his best to earn money.
4. I want to see my mother.
5. Did you see him do his homework yesterday?
6. Learning English cost me two years.
7. Do you know how to learn English?

Key Points

1. The infinitive as a predicative expresses purpose.
2. The infinitive as a predicative can use too…to, so…as to, enough to express results.
3. The infinitive for several habit use.

The question is which of the methods to adopt.
问题是我们将采用何种方法。
动词不定式（4）

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>一般时</th>
<th>完成时</th>
<th>进行时</th>
<th>完成进行时</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to do</td>
<td>to have done</td>
<td>to be doing</td>
<td>to have been doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示：
不定式的时态在使用时局限性很大，通常用于下面几种情况。

1. 在主+系+形+不定式的结构中，有时使用不定式的完成时、进行时或完成进行时来表示不同的时间关系。

   - I’m glad to work with you.
     很高兴和你一起工作。

   - I’m glad to have worked with you.
     （表示已经在一起工作过了）

   - I’m glad to be working with you.
     （表示目前正在一起工作）

   - I’m glad to have been working with you.
     （表示一直在一起工作）

     很高兴能一直和你一起工作。

2. 不定式做主语补语时，有时使用完成时、进行时或完成进行时来表示不同的时间关系，注意比较下面句子的时间关系。

   - He is said to be studying English.
     据说他正在学英语。

   - He is said to have studied English.
     据说他学过英语。

   - He is said to have been studying English.
     据说他一直在学英语。

   Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer.
   A. to invent  B. inventing  C. to have invented  D. having invented

3. 不定式在plan, wish, expect等个别动词后面做宾语，有时用完成时来表示与事实相反的情况。
LESSON TWENTY THREE

The TV set needs to be repaired.

This TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?

The TV set needs to be repaired.

The TV set seems to have been repaired.

There is a letter to be answered.

There is only one happiness in life, to love and be loved.

War is much too important to be left to the military.

● No one likes to be treated as a child.

● Do you know the name of the book to be written by your teacher?

= Do you know the name of the book which will be written by your teacher?
There is nothing to **be done**.

我也没有办法了。

There is no one to **take care of**.

没人需要照顾。

注：上面1、2两句的主动被动已成为固定的用法，意思完全不同，请特别注意。

下列句子中习惯上不用被动，因为在感觉上不定式有一个逻辑主语。

The beer is bitter (for some one) to **taste**.

这啤酒喝起来有点儿苦。

### 课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 孙老师把课堂上不许说话定成一个规矩。
2. 我真希望我学过英语。
3. 我很高兴我能够一直和你一起生活。
4. 这台电视需要修理了。
5. 据说你父亲现在住在美国。
6. 他去美国，目的就是为了挣更多的钱。
7. 他把那条咬过你的狗杀了。
8. 你见到那条狗了吗？就是那条要吃我们家猫的狗。
9. 我走进他的卧室，结果发现他睡着了。
10. 你知道克服这个困难的方法吗？

### 课堂练习（2）

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 我很高兴你知道学习英语对你来说很重要。
2. 你是否知道你们班长想要在下个学期去美国学英语？
3. 昨天我看到你们班长偷你的钱包了。
4. 昨天夜里12点我听到你们班的漂亮女孩在二楼厕所里唱歌。
5. 你知道你们班长每天花多少时间学习英语吗？
6. 你知道你们班老师喜欢旅游吗？
7. 我妈妈不允许我在外面吃饭。
8. 谁教给你偷钱包的？
9. 当我六岁的时候，我就开始学习做饭。
用不定式改写下列句子。
1. Women have become a force which will be reckoned with in society.
   Women have become a force in society.
2. Have you found the letter that will go by air?
   Have you found the letter by air?
3. The film that will be shown in the auditorium is a love story.
   The film in the auditorium is a love story.
4. He had no room in which he lived.
   He had no room.
5. Will you see the air show which is going to be shown in the airport?
   Will you see the air show in the airport?
6. Do you have any letter that must be posted?
   Do you have any letter.
7. I can find a bookshelf where you can put all your books.
   I can find a bookshelf.
8. They have got all the pictures that are to be displayed at the exhibition.
   They have got all the pictures at the exhibition.
9. The chief stewardess has an announcement that she has to make now.
   The chief stewardess has an announcement now.
10. Do you know the man who will be operated on this afternoon?
    Do you know the man this afternoon?
11. I’m glad that I was able to help you.
    I’m glad.
12. He was so angry that he could not speak.
    He was.
13. He got there and found that everybody had gone.
   He got there           that everybody had gone.

14. Do you remember whom you should return the pen?
   Do you remember          ?

15. Don’t forget that you have a lot of homework that you have to do.
   Don’t forget that you have a lot of homework         .

16. I have not made up my mind if I will invite my girl friend to my home.
   I have not made up my mind            my girl friend to my home.

17. By the weekend, we will have decided who will be our monitor.
   By the weekend, we will have decided          our monitor.

课堂练习（4）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

汉译英
1、说话和气伤不到舌头。
2、节约时间就是延长(lengthen)生命。
3、你的儿子已经到了上学的年纪了。
4、洪水足以毁坏这座建筑。
5、为了省钱他住在只有一个卧室的公寓里。
6、他的工作就是保持二层的所有教室清洁。
7、他很幸运考试通过了。
8、下一个到港的航班是从纽约来的。
9、他要在美国学习的愿望是可以理解的。
10、我看(consider)他太懒了。
11、据说他一直在学英语。
12、一个乘务员站在每个舱门口(cabin door)，欢迎旅客登机。

重要提示
掌握不定式并不难，只是在我们原来学的三种基本句型中，加进不定式即可。比如在主系表句型中，主语是名词，如果需要用到动词做主语时，就应用不定式做主语，表语、宾语也是如此。在做状语时，我们以前是用副词、介词短语和状语从句，不定式也可以做状语，但是要记住，它主要用于表示目的，不定式的时态和语态与我们学过的时态和语态的用法基本一样。
LESSON TWENTY FOUR

动名词

导言

我们在本书第一课曾讲过，词性及词序的重要性。在学动名词时，我们只要把动名词看作一个带有动词特点的名词，在词序上用于名词的位置，这样学习起来就会感到容易多了。加ing的根本用意是区别于谓语动词保证三种基本句型不乱。

孙老师提示：

动名词的构成

动词做主语

孙老师提示：

• Hijacking is a form of blackmail.
  劫持是敲诈的一种形式。

• Teaching English as the second language is not an easy job.
  把英语作为第二语言教不是一件容易的工作。

• Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass.
  生活没有目标就像航海没有指南针。——法国作家大仲马

动名词的构成

孙老师提示：

动名词与不定式做主语的区别

动名词与不定式做主语的区别

孙老师提示：

动名词具有较多名词的性质，偏重一种抽象泛指的概念，而不定式更像动词，强调具体的动作。有时并无明显的区别，两种用法经常可以互换使用，但对于一些习惯用法不能互换。

• Smoking is not allowed in the classroom.
  教室里不许吸烟。（泛指）

• It is not good for you to smoke.
  吸烟对你身体不好。（具体）

• It is no use crying over spilt milk.
  牛奶洒了，哭也无用。（覆水难收）（谚语）

• To win (winning) or to lose (losing) is temporary, but friendship lasts.
  胜败是暂时的，友谊天长地久。
  （既可表示泛指也可表示具体）
LESSON TWENTY FOUR
孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

孙老师提示:

第一句教室里不许抽烟，说的一个概念，用动名词好一些。第二句具体到对某人吸烟的行为，用不定式好一些。第三句no use后面习惯用doing，而不用不定式。第四句如果说话的人只是泛指可以用动名词，如果是指具体的某场比赛则可用不定式。

动名词做表语

- My job is teaching English.
  我的工作是教英语。

- What he likes is watching TV after supper.
  他喜欢晚饭后看电视。

- Education is not the filling of a pail, but the lighting of a fire.
  教育不是注满一桶水，而是点燃一把火。
  注：做表语时动名词与不定式的区别同它们做主语的区别相同。

动名词做介词宾语

- Try a horse by riding it; try a man by associating with him.
  试马要骑马，试人要交人。（谚语）

- Without climbing mountains, no one can know the height of heaven.
  不登高山，不知天高：不临深渊，不知地厚。（谚语）

- Love does not consist in gazing at each other but in looking outward together in the same direction.
  --Antoine Saint Exupery, French novelist, essayist and pilot
  爱情不在于相互凝视，而在于共同往外朝一个方向看。

动名词做定语

动名词做定语完全是一种习惯性的词组。比如：

a swimming pool  spelling mistakes a reading room

动名词做宾语

1. 什么动词后面跟动名词，什么动词后跟不定式或两者都可以，完全是英语语言习惯，必须死记硬背。下列动词后只能用动名词。mind, finish, enjoy, require, delay, postpone, practice, avoid, consider, deny, give up, put off, advise, favor, encourage, imagine, allow等。

- I first considered writing to him, but then decided to speak to him face to face.
  起初我想写信给他，但后来我决定还是当面跟他讲。
2. *like, love, hate, begin, start* 等动词后即可用不定式也可以用动名词。它们之间的区别与它们做主语和表语时的区别一样。有时界限并不十分明显，可以换用。

- He doesn’t *like seeing* films. (泛指)
- He doesn’t *like to see* this film. (具体)

- *I hate smoking.*
  我讨厌吸烟。（泛指对吸烟的行为很厌恶）
- *I hate to smoke.*
  我不爱吸烟。（具体指我不喜欢吸烟）

3. 在下列动词后可以跟不定式，也可以跟动名词，但意思大不相同。

**stop**

- *I stopped smoking* last year.
  去年我就不吸烟了。

- Let’s *stop to have* cigarettes to calm our nerves.
  我们停下来，吸支烟定定神儿。

**help**

- He can’t *help crying*.
  他情不自禁哭起来。

- I can’t *help to clean the room*.
  我不能帮着打扫房间。

**remember**

- I don’t *remember borrowing* money from you.
  我不记得向你借过钱。

- Remember *to close* the window when you leave.
  别忘了离开时把窗子关上。
**forget**

- I forget seeing him before.
  我忘了我见过他。

- Don’t forget to take the raincoat with you.
  别忘了带着雨衣。

**try**

- We will try to win the match.
  我们将努力打赢这场比赛。

- Try calling her again. She may come back.
  试着再给她打个电话。她也许回来了。

--I usually go there by train.
--Why not ____ by boat for a change?
  A. to try going           B. trying to go
  C. to try and go          D. try going
  (“D”是正确的)

**regret**

- I regret not studying English hard.
  我后悔没有努力学英语。
  （regret—懊悔，studying表示发生在谓语动作之前。）

- I regret to say I can’t go to see the film with you.
  我很抱歉不能和你一起去看电影。
  （regret—抱歉，to say是指现在。）

You were brave enough to raise objections at the meeting.
--Well, now I regret ______ that.
  A. to do                 B. to be doing
  C. to have done          D. having done

注：D regret doing sth (或 having done sth)=后悔做……。
Regret to do sth = 抱歉或者遗憾做……。
该句用well表示转折，现在后悔了。所以要用D。

**propose**

- I propose to go there by air.
  我打算坐飞机去。
LESSON TWENTY FOUR

动名词的逻辑主语
动名词接近名词，所以当动名词动作的发出者和句子的主语不一致时，要在动名词前加所有格以表明动名词动作的发出者。

● Do you mind [opening the window]?
你不介意把窗子打开吧？
（mind和open这两个动词的发出者都是you。）

● Do you mind my [smoking here]?
你不介意我在这吸烟吧？
注：mind的主语是you，而吸烟的动作发出者却是“我”，所以要在smoking前加my，以表示smoking的动作是谁发出的。

I hate Tom’s [singing].
我讨厌听汤姆唱歌。

I would appreciate _____ back this afternoon.
A .you to call B. you call 
C. your calling D. you’re calling
注：C 注意appreciate后面应接动名词doing something，动名词前如果有逻辑主语，应用所有格。

动名词的时态

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>一般</th>
<th>完成</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doing</td>
<td>having done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

动名词的完成时态实际应用较少，在大多数情况下，用于做宾语，实际上动名词已经表示一个已发生的动作，其完成时态不过是进一步强调动名词的动作发生在谓语动词之前。
What worried the child most was ______ to visit his mother in the hospital.
A. his not allowing                                     B. his not being allowed
C. his being not allowed                             D. having not been allowed

Tony was very unhappy ______ to the party.
A. having not been invited                          B. not having invited
C. having not invited                                  D. not having been invited
LESSON TWENTY FOUR

www.teachersun.com

孙老师提示:

课堂练习()

(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

本栏目题全部来自历年原卷

注：D for 为介词，后面应接动名词作宾语，其否定式为“not+ 动名词”。

3. While shopping, people sometimes can’t help _____ into buying something they don’t really need.
   A. to persuade
   B. persuading
   C. being persuaded
   D. be persuaded

注：C can’t help doing 表示不由自主、情不自禁。这里表达的是被动所以用 doing 的被动 being done。

孙老师提示：

在 need, want, clean, require, to be worth 等词后面跟动名词时，一般不用被动，用不定式需用被动。

- The TV set needs repairing.
- The TV set needs to be repaired.
  电视需要修理了。
- If a thing is worth doing, it is worth doing well.
  如果一件事值得做，就应该把它做好。（谚语）
- A clean hand wants no washing.
  干净的手用不着洗，廉洁的人不需自我表白。（谚语）
3. I know you hate smoking, would you mind ______ here?
   A. smoking  B. to smoke  C. my smoking  D. for me to smoke

4. Give me some paper ______.
   A. to write on  B. writing  C. written  D. to be written

5. The stewardesses also attempt ______ passengers who have language difficulties.
   A. to be identified  B. to identify  C. identifying  D. identified

6. In addition ______ the regular cabin checks, the attendants should answer call buttons promptly and courteously.
   A. to making  B. to make  C. making  D. make

7. The way ______ how to swim is by swimming.
   A. to learn  B. learning  C. to be learnt  D. having learnt

8. I regret ______ to see you when you were ill.
   A. having been unable  B. not able  C. being able  D. not have been able

9. He said he regretted ______ her the truth.
   A. not having told  B. not being told  C. to be telling  D. to be told

10. What do you need ______?
    A. buying  B. to be bought  C. to buy  D. have bought

11. I remember ______ for the job, but I forget the exact amount.
    A. being paid  B. to pay  C. paying  D. to have paid

12. I’m not used ______ in America.
    A. to live  B. living  C. to living  D. I live

13. I’m not used ______ teacher.
### LESSON TWENTY FOUR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Correct Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14. My bicycle needs _____.</td>
<td>A. to be repaired</td>
<td>B. being repaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. This is the plan _____. tomorrow.</td>
<td>A. to be discussed</td>
<td>B. being discussed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Her first reaction _____. the police.</td>
<td>A. was calling</td>
<td>B. she would call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. People prefer paying large sum of money _____. their life work (一生的事业) destroyed by gangsters (强盗).</td>
<td>A. than have</td>
<td>B. to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. I believe him _____. right.</td>
<td>A. to be</td>
<td>B. being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. I saw a man _____. and say something to the girl.</td>
<td>A. coming up</td>
<td>B. will come up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. There must be thousands of honest way _____. a decent living in our country.</td>
<td>A. earning</td>
<td>B. to earn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. The flight service crew also tries _____. passenger who have never traveled by air before and help them.</td>
<td>A. identifying</td>
<td>B. identified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 重要提示

1、动名词不过是一个具有动词性质的名词而已。
2、注意动名词与不定式的区别，一个更像动词，一个更像名词。
导言
分词在英语中是非常活跃的语言现象。在学习分词的过程中应该明确，在大多数情况下分词只是从句的一种省略形式，目的在于使语言更为简练，尤其在笔头上。所以无论是现在分词，还是过去分词都与从句的主动被动，时态有着密切的关系。注意将分词短语与从句加以比较，对于理解分词有很大的帮助。

分词的构成
现在分词——动词原形+ing
过去分词——动词原形+ed（部分分词有不规则变化）

孙老师提示：
分词分为现在分词和过去分词两种。现在分词通常含有主动和进行两个概念，过去分词通常含有被动和完成两个概念。

分词做定语
1、单独一个分词做定语通常放在所修饰的名词前面。

孙老师提示：
现在分词和过去分词做表语时，因为它们像形容词，很多词典已经把它们列为形容词或某种习惯，用法如to be interested in, to be excited on.
LESSON TWENTY FIVE

an **understanding** man = a man who understands others.
一个能理解别人的人。
（现在分词表示主动）

a **developing** country = a country which is developing
发展中国家。
（现在分词表示进行）

**smoked** fish = fish which has been smoked
熏鱼。
（过去分词表示被动和完成）

a **developed** country = a country which has been developed
发达国家。
（过去分词表示完成）

2、分词短语做定语往往放在所修饰的名词之后，实际上是一个定语从句的省略，但要注意不是所有的定语从句都能用分词代替。关键在于定语从句的时态。下面举例说明。

She is the girl (who is) **standing** there.

This is the book (which was ) **written** by our teacher.

The girl **sitting in that corner** is a good singer.
坐在角落的那个姑娘是个好歌手。
（现在分词短语做定语时表示的是进行）

**Do you know the way** **leading** into the mountain ?
你知道进山的那条路吗？
（将which省略，将leads改为现在分词。从上面句子可以看出，现在分词短语做定语也可以表示与谓语动作同时发生）。

**Do you know the teacher** **to teach us English**?

= **Do you know the teacher** **who will teach us English**?
你认识要教我们英语的那位教师吗？

孙老师提示:

上面的句子只能用不定式做定语因为从句所表达的意思是将来时，因此，现在分词短语做定语时，动作必须与谓语动作同时发生，否则不能用现在分词做定语。
● The proposal [made by him] will be discussed.

= The proposal [that was made by him, will be discussed].

他提出的提议将被讨论。

孙老师提示:
上句所定名词proposal是make动作的承受者，所用过去分词。我们可以从定语从句中看出，过去分词含被动和完成的概念，也就是该分词的动作发生在谓语动词之前。

● The goods [ordered from abroad] will be delivered soon.

= The goods, which were ordered from abroad, will be delivered soon.

从国外定的货很快就会被送来。

孙老师提示：
过去分词做定语含有被动和完成的概念，即分词的动作发生在谓语动词之前，因此，不是所有被动语态的定语从句都可省略成过去分词。请看例句：

● Do you know the name of the book [which will be written by our teacher]?

你知道我们老师要写的书的名字吗？

该句的written发生在谓语动词know之后，所以不能省掉which will be。如果省略意思就变了。请看例句。

● Do you know the name of the book [written by our teacher]?

= Do you know the name of the book [that was written by our teacher]?

你知道我们老师写的那本书的书名吗？
（意思是该书已写出来了）

孙老师提示：
分词做状语实际上就是一个并列句或状语从句的省略，同时对句子稍做改动。

● As he is a clever boy, he studies very well.

= Being a clever boy, he studies very well.

因为他是个聪明孩子，所以他学习很好。

● When she was asked about it, she said she knew nothing.

= (When) asked about it, she said she knew nothing.

当问起她这件事时，她说她不知道。

分词做状语
LESSON TWENTY FIVE

孙老师提示：
上可用过去分词，因其是一个由被动语态的从句省略而来的句子。有时我们可以保留一些连词，像when, while等。

● **If they are applied in agriculture**, the machines will save farmers much labor.

= **If applied in agriculture**, the machines will save farmers much labor.

如果将这些机器用于农业，就可以省去农民很多劳动。

注：如果连词是if，我们通常保留。

After I have dinner I will go to see a film.
= (After) **Having dinner, I will go to see a film.**

孙老师提示：
现在分词做宾语补语

可以用于这种结构的动词有 hear, see, notice, watch等感官动词。

● **I saw the boy climbing the tree**.

我看到那个孩子在爬树。

注：在这种结构中我们也可以用省略to的不定式，**I saw the boy climb the tree**.现在分词表示进行，而不定式表示有这么一回事。

● **I heard someone knocking at the door**.

● **I heard someone knock at the door**.

第一句，我听到有人正在敲门。（强调进行）
第二句，我听到有人敲门。（强调有这么一回事）

孙老师提示：
过去分词做宾语补语

have sth. done或get sth. done表示让别人做某事。

● you should have your TV set **repaired**.

你应该把你的电视送去修一下。

● I will go to get my hair **cut**.

我要去理个发。
现在分词的时态

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>一般时</th>
<th>doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>完成时</td>
<td>having done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

孙老师提示:
现在分词的完成时主要用于状语从句，强调分词的动作发生在谓语动作之前，简单地说，当状语从句的时态是完成时，我们在省略时，也用分词的完成时。

- After he had waited for long time, he was asked into the office.
  = Having waited for long time, he was asked into the office.
  在等了很长时间之后，他被叫进了办公室。

- Having been kept indoor for the whole morning, the children became impatient.
  = As they had been kept indoor for the whole morning, the children became impatient.
  孩子们在室内呆了一上午，开始坐不住了。

- I heard the noise of furniture being moved upstairs.
  = I heard the noise of furniture that was being moved upstairs.
  我听到楼上正在搬家具的声音。

现在分词的被动语态

| 现在分词的被动 | being done |
| 现在分词完成时的被动 | having been done |

孙老师提示:
现在分词的被动语态和完成时的被动语态，主要用于做状语和定语。注意下列每对句子中分词与从句的时态和语态。

- Since I have never been to China, I know little about the country.
  = Never having been to China, I know little about the country.
  因为没去过中国，我对那个国家知道的很少。

- Having been kept indoor for the whole morning, the children became impatient.
  = As they had been kept indoor for the whole morning, the children became impatient.
LESSON TWENTY FIVE

孙老师提示：

独立主格结构看起来很乱，实际上我们只要把它看成一个从句的省略，就容易明白了。

- Because he is ill, he will not go to school.
  
  = Being ill, he will not go to school.
  因为他病了，他不能去上学。

- Because his mother is ill, he will not go to school.
  
  = His mother being ill, he will not go to school.
  因为他母亲病了，他不能上学。

孙老师提示：

第一句主从句的主语相同，省略主语后，不会产生混乱。第二句主从句主语不同，因此应保留从句的主语，只将is变为being，这就是独立主格结构的意义所在。请看下面例句：

- Because the last bus had gone, we had to walk home.
  
  = The last bus having gone, we had to walk home.
  因为最后一班车已经去了，我们只有走着回家了。

- The dark clouds had disappeared and the sun shone again.
  
  = The dark clouds having disappeared, the sun shone again.
  乌云散去，太阳又照耀着大地。

课堂演示

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

Thought Frenchmen and Americans have many common practices (when they eat) when eating, there are also some differences in table manners. The French keep the fork in the left hand while (they are) eating meat; but many Americans don’t. In France, both hands should be kept on the table while (they are) eating. In the U.S., the left hand may be on the lap. Frenchmen break off a piece of bread with their fingers and eat it. Americans, in contrast, pick up the whole piece. Finally, Frenchmen eat fruit with a knife and a fork. Americans, on the other hand, usually use their fingers.

虽然法国人和美国人在吃的方面有很多共同之处，但在餐桌礼仪方面也存在着一些不同。法国人吃肉时是左手拿叉；但很多美国人不是这样。在法国，吃饭时双手都要放在桌上。在美国，左手可以放在膝上。法国人用手将面包掰成小块吃，美国人则整个吃。最后一点不同的是，法国人用刀和叉吃水果，而美国人通常用手吃。
LESSON TWENTY FIVE
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语
www.teachersun.com

课堂练习（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

练习示范
例：The stewardesses make frequent cabin checks throughout the flight and offer any services that may be needed by the passengers.

The stewardesses make frequent cabin checks throughout the flight, offering any services that may be needed by the passengers.

将下列句子中划线的部分改用分词短语。
1. Aviation has its tradition. In the early years, for it was influenced by the keep right (右行) rules of the road and at sea, aircraft also kept right on the airway.
2. The sky around an airport is full of different kinds of aircraft which fly at different speeds in different directions when they cross over each other at different heights.
3. There are long lines of people who are waiting to buy the tickets.
4. As soon as the meal was over, we began to work again.
5. After his homework was done, Jim decided to go and see the play.
6. There are nine planets that are running around the sun and the earth is one of them.
7. I hate to see the letter that were written in pencil.
8. If everything was taken into consideration, the plan, which Tom put forward, seems to be more workable.
9. Because the last bus had gone, we had to walk home.
10. A little girl walked past and her hair blew in the air.
11. After I talk to you I always feel better.

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

一、用现在分词或过去分词填空。
1. Our achievements are very ____(strike).
2. We were greatly ____ (touch) by the film which we saw yesterday.
3. Everyone was ____ (excite) on hearing the news.
4. The report is ____ (inspire).
5. The ____ (oppress) people there rose in arms.
6. I bought the ____ (smoke) fish for lunch.
7. Did you visit the tomb of the ____ (unknow) soldier?
8. She is a ____ (charm) girl.
9. Please sweep away the heap of ____ (fall) leaves.
10. ____ I like to watch ____ (fall) snow.
11. ____ Some time ago, an ____ (interest) discovery was made by archaeologists (考古学家).
12. ____ The people ____ (live) in this building are pilots.
13. Do you know the plan____(discuss) yesterday?
14. He came to visit me,____(bring) his younger brother with him.
15. ____ (educate) in London, he speaks English very well.
16. ____ (help) by our teacher, we can pass the final examination.
17. ____ (climb) up the hill, you will be able to see the river beyond.
18. Let’s have your voice____(record).
19. I’m going to have my radio____(repair).
20. I heard the window____(open).
21. Keeping airplanes____ (separate) is the main task of the air traffic (or tower) controller.
22. ____ (see) from space, our earth, with water____ (cover) 70% of its surface, appears as a “blue planet”.

### 课堂练习（3）
（详细讲解请登录www.teachersun.com）

选择。
1. ____ the instrument may work longer.
   A. Handling properly          B. To handle properly
   C. If handled properly        D. If handling properly

2. ____ I couldn’t get on the plane.
   A. Having no ticket.          B. To have no ticket
   C. Not to have ticket         D. Having not ticket

3. I don’t like your way____.
   A. to be talking              B. at talking
   C. of talking                 D. having talked

4. This is not the way____.
   A. talking                    B. being taken
   C. to talk                    D. to be talking

5. ____ , we started to look for jobs.
   A. All our savings gone      B. All our saving was gone
   C. All our saving going      D. All our saving to go

6. The terminal building____ now is a big project.
   A. built                      B. being built
   C. to be built                D. having been built

7. The story,____, attracted the attention of all the children.
   A. being really interesting   B. being really interested
   C. to be interesting          D. really interesting

8. ____ , our work is well done.
A. Taking into consideration  
B. Taking everything into consideration  
C. Everything taken into consideration  
D. To take everything into consideration

9. I first considered _____ to him, but then decided _____ to him in person.
   A. writing…speaking  
   B. to write…to speak  
   C. to write…speaking  
   D. writing…to speak

10. I couldn’t postpone ____ his letter.
    A. answering  
    B. to answer  
    C. having answered  
    D. to have answered

11. Don’t you see the policeman _____ towards us.
    A. to run  
    B. run  
    C. running  
    D. ran

12. _____ to London, I know nothing about it.
    A. Having never been  
    B. Not being  
    C. No to be  
    D. No to have been

13. She took out the letter, ____ it several times in her hand.
    A. turning  
    B. to be turning  
    C. having turned  
    D. to turn

14. _____, the children were excited.
    A. Never seeing such a large plane  
    B. Not to see such a large plane  
    C. Never having seen such a large plane  
    D. Not to have seen such a large plane

15. No one can ____ by advertisements.
    A. avoid to be influenced  
    B. avoid to influence  
    C. avoid being influenced  
    D. avoid influencing

16. The boy, ____ , was sent to his parents.
    A. to be rescued  
    B. being rescued  
    C. having been rescued  
    D. to rescue

17. He died in 1992, ____ as a national calamity.
    A. being considered  
    B. considered  
    C. his death being considered  
    D. considering

18. As there was so much noise, he couldn’t make himself ____.
    A. being heard  
    B. heard  
    C. to hear  
    D. hearing
19. _____, I was dismissed.
   A. Having noted down my name and addresses
   B. Noting down my name and addresses
   C. Having noted down the police man’s name and address
   D. The police man having noted down my name and address

20. _____, We’d better put the meeting off.
   A. We are ill
   B. We being ill
   C. Because ill
   D. The dean being ill

21. When she heard the news she could not help _____.
   A. to cry
   B. cry
   C. crying
   D. to be crying

22. Mr. Smith advised us to withdraw _____.
   A. so that to get not involved
   B. so as to get not involved
   C. so as not to get involved
   D. so that not to get involved

23. Do you know the way _____ to the small village?
   A. to lead
   B. leading
   C. to be led
   D. have led

24. In our college, there are a lot of students _____.
   A. wishing to go to America
   B. to wish to go to America
   C. to wish going to America
   D. wishing to have gone to America.

25. On seeing the dog _____ towards him, he fled.
   A. to walk
   B. be having walked
   C. walk
   D. walked

26. Ashamed of _____ so rashly, he apologized to Tom for him.
   A. acting……accusing
   B. having acted……having accused
   C. acted……accused
   D. acting……accused

27. _____, Mary had to look after him.
   A. Having fallen ill
   B. His brother having fallen ill
   C. Her having fallen ill
   D. To have fallen ill

28. I would like you _____ my father.
   A. seeing
   B. see
   C. to see
   D. having seen
LESSON TWENTY SIX
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

虚拟语气

导言
英语中虚拟语气是通过动词时态的变化来体现。本课在讲解虚拟语气时，所用的方法与传统讲法不同，我们试图从句子时态的改变来推论出虚拟的构成，只要同学理解了这一点，就可以举一反三，掌握虚拟语气。

孙老师提示:
虚拟语气是用来表示与事实相反或不大可能实现的情况。主要是通过动词的时态变化来体现的。

虚拟语气动词时态变化的规则

孙老师提示:
对于一个已经学过从句，又能正确使用时态的学生来说，掌握虚拟语气并不难。英语的虚拟语气是将句子动词原本应该使用的时态向后退一步，以表示该句与事实相反。后退的方法如下:

现在时——退——过去时
现在完成时——退——过去完成时
过去时——退——过去完成时
一般将来时——退——过去将来时
过去将来时——退——过去将来完成时

注: 在虚拟语气中不用was，所有人称都用were。

1、虚拟语气在条件句中的应用。

- If I have money I will lend it to you.
- If I had money I would lend it to you.

孙老师提示:
第一句话没有使用虚拟，表示我可能会借你钱。第二句话使用了虚拟，表示我不可能借你钱。用虚拟只是一种委婉的说法。对比两句的时态，正像我们上面所讲的，现在时退到过去时，一般将来时退到过去将来时。

- If I have time, I will go to see you.
- If I had time, I would go to see you.
孙老师提示：
由于我不可能是你，所以第一句话必须虚拟，因此第一句是错误的句子，但我们可以从中看出时态的变化。为了方便理解，在下面的例句中都会给出一个假设句，但必须指出，例句中的假设句只是为了逻辑说明，在实际应用中是不存在的，也就是说是错的。

× 假设句 If I’m you, I will buy that car. （假设句）
● If I were you, I would buy that car.

由于我不可能是你，所以第一句话必须虚拟，因此第一句是错误的句子，但我们可以从中看出时态的变化。为了方便理解，在下面的例句中都会给出一个假设句，但必须指出，例句中的假设句只是为了逻辑说明，在实际应用中是不存在的，也就是说是错的。

× 假设句 If it snows in summer, it will be great fun.
● 虚拟句 If it snowed in summer, it would be great fun.

如果夏天能下雪，那该多有意思。

现在时 ———— 过去时（从句）
snows ———— snowed
一般将来时 ——— 过去将来时（主句）
will be ———— would be

Without the air to hold some of the sun’s heat, the earth at night , too cold for us to live.
A. would be freezing cold
B. will be freezing coldly
C. would be frozen cold
D. can freeze coldly
注：A. 对将来时的虚拟退为过去将来时。

× 假设句 If I bought my checkbook yesterday, I would pay by check.
● 虚拟句 If I had bought my checkbook yesterday, I would have paid by check.

如果昨天我带支票来了，我就会付支票。

过去时 ———— 过去完成时（从句）
bought ———— had bought
过去将来时 ——— 过去将来完成时（主句）
would pay ———— would have paid

× 假设句 If I had your address in New York, I would call on you before I came back to China.
● 虚拟句 If I had had your address in New York, I would have called on you before I came back to China.

如果我有你在纽约的地址，我回中国以前，就去看你了。
LEsson twenty six

过去时 treasure 过去完成时（从句）
had treasure had
过去将来时 treasure 过去将来完成时（主句）
would call on treasure would have called on

I didn’t see your sister at the meeting. If she ______, she would have met my brother.
A. has come B. did come C. came D. had come

注：表示对过去时间的虚拟，过去时退过去完成时，过去将来时，退过去将来完成时。

× 假设句 If you haven’t finished the homework by now, you will not be allowed to see the film this evening.

● 虚拟句 If you hadn’t finished the homework by now, you would not be allowed to see the film this evening.

如果你到现在还没做完作业的话晚上就不让你去看电影了。

现在完成时 treasure 过去完成时（从句）
haven’t finished treasure hadn’t finished
一般将来时 treasure 过去将来时（主句）
will be allowed treasure would be allowed

× 假设句 If he took my advice, he will be a scientist.

● 虚拟句 If he had taken my advice last year, he would be a scientist in the future.

如果他以前听我的建议，他将会成为一个科学家。

过去时 treasure 过去完成时（从句）
took treasure had taken
一般将来时 treasure 过去将来时（主句）
will be treasure would be

× 假设句 If you were there, the meeting might go smoothly.

● 虚拟句 If you had been there, the meeting might have gone smoothly.

如果你要是在，会就会开得更顺利。

注：情态动词时态倒退的方法与一般动词一样，如can, may等情态动词可以把它们看作将来时，could, might看作过去将来时，could have done, might have done看作过去将来完
LESSON TWENTY SIX

成时。

假设句 If there was more snow last year, we will have a good harvest this fall.

虚拟句 If there had been more snow last year, we would have a good harvest this fall.

如果去年多下一点雪，今年秋天就会有个好收成。

过去时 —— 退 —— 过去完成时（从句）

was ———— had been

一般将来时 —— 退 —— 过去将来时（主句）

will have ———— would have

注：上面的一些例句在传统教学中称为错综句，理解上比较困难，用时态后退的方法，做起就容易了。

虚拟条件句中if的省略

孙老师提示：

如果虚拟条件句中有were或had done通常可将were或had放在句首，if可省略。

If I had studied more, I would have passed the test.

Had I studied more, I would have passed the test.

If I were in your place I wouldn’t say so.

Were I in your place, I wouldn’t say so.

如果我处在你的位置，我就不这样说。

____ for the free tickets, I would not have gone to the films so often.

A. If it is not B. Were it not
C. Had it not been D. If they were not

虚拟条件句省略if，条件句必须倒装，因条件句是过去时，所以应退过去完成时。应选C。

孙老师提示：

用介词短语表示虚拟条件

× 假设句 Without your help, we will not be able to finish the work in time.

虚拟句 Without your help, we would not be able to finish the work in time.

没有你的帮助我就不能按时完成这项工作。
LESSON TWENTY SIX
孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

一般将来时 ── 退 ── 过去将来时
will not be ──── would not be

× 假设句  But for his good education, he would not get the job.

● 虚拟句  But for his good education, he would not have got the job.
幸亏他受过很好的教育，否则不会找到那份工作的。

过去将来时 ── 退 ── 过去将来完成时
would not get ─────── would not have got

在 if only, wish, as if(as though) 后的句子用虚拟

× 假设句  If only this rain will stop!

● 虚拟句  If only this rain would stop!
如果雨会停就好了。

一般将来时 ── 退 ── 过去将来时
will ───────── would

× 假设句  If only our team scored one more point!

● 虚拟句  If only our team had scored one more point!
如果我们的队多得分就好了。

过去时 ── 退 ── 过去完成时
scored ─────── had scored

If only he _______ quietly as the doctor instructed, he would not suffer so much now.
A. lies    B. lay    C. had lain    D. should lie
注: if only 后用虚拟，从句是对过去的虚拟，应用过去完成时。主句是对将来的虚拟，应退到
过去完成将来时，该句是错综虚拟语句，既主句和从句跳跃两个时间。

× 假设句  I wish the semester is over now.

● 虚拟句  I wish the semester were over now.
我希望这个学期现在就结束。

现在时 ── 退 ── 过去时
is ───────── were

注: wish 后的从句可以用 were 也可以用 was.
LESSON TWENTY SIX

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

孙老师提示:
独立虚拟句

独立虚拟句是指在一定的上下文中，不需要条件句、介词短语、if only等，虚拟句也可以独立使用。

× 假设句 I wish I didn’t get rid of those old letters.

● 虚拟句 I wish I hadn’t gotten rid of those old letters.
我希望我没有把那些旧信扔了。

过去时——退——过去完成时
didn’t get rid of ——— hadn’t gotten rid of

× 假设句 He treats me as if I’m a child.

● 虚拟句 He treats me as if I were a child.
他对我就像我是个孩子似的。

现在时——退——过去时
am ——— were

× 假设句 He talks as if he saw it himself.

● 虚拟句 He talks as if he had seen it himself.
他讲话的样子好像是他亲眼看见似的。

过去时——退——过去完成时
saw ——— had seen

When a pencil is partly in a glass of water, it looks as if it _____.
A. breaks             B. has broken
C. were broken         D. had been broken
注：as if 后用虚拟，现在时退过去时。

孙老师提示:
as though在很多情况下不用使用虚拟形式。

请看例句：
● It may look as though I’m ready for this trip, but I haven’t even packed my suitcase.

● It seems as though we’ve known each other for a long time instead of just two weeks.

孙老师提示:
独立虚拟句

独立虚拟句是指在一定的上下文中，不需要条件句、介词短语、if only等，虚拟句也可以独立使用。

× 假设句 It will be wrong to say so.
LESSON TWENTY SIX
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

- 虚拟句 It **would be** wrong to say so.
  要是那样讲就错了。（不会那样讲）

  一般将来时 —— 退 —— 过去将来时
  will be —— would be

  × 假设句 Only a fool **will trust** him.
  只有傻子才会信任他。（不会有人相信他）

  一般将来时 —— 退 —— 过去将来时
  will trust —— would trust

  It is (high) time that 句子中 that 从句动词用虚拟

  × 假设句 **It is time** we are off.
  到了该走的时间了。

  ● 虚拟句 **It is time** we were off.
  到了该走的时间了。

  × 假设句 **It is high time** that we stop empty talk.
  是该停止空谈的时候了。

  ● 虚拟句 **It is high time** that we **stopped** empty talk.
  是该停止空谈的时候了。

  × 假设句 **It is high time** we **will do** something to stop air pollution.

  ● 虚拟句 **It is high time** we **would do** something to stop air pollution.
  到了我们为阻止空气污染做点事情的时候了。

在某些主语从句和条件状语从句中虚拟的用法

孙老师提示:

在 **It is important, impossible, strange, vital, natural, essential, desirable, preferable, advisable, appropriate, surprising, sad, that...** 句型中，主语从句在英国英语中用 should + 原形动词。在美国英语中省略 should 直接用原形。

在 **for fear that**（以防……起见）引导的条件句中用法同上。

在 **unless, when, so(as) long as, suppose, in case, on condition** 引导的条件状语从句中也可用虚拟语气，用法同上。
It is necessary that he (should) come on time to attend the meeting.

He took an umbrella for fear that it (should) rain.

As long as my wife (should) get ready, we will go.

He insisted that we (should) get there on time.

The dean proposed that the question (should) not be discussed at once.

She said she never expected I (should) lend money to her.

Were (was) to 有时在虚拟条件句中用 were (was) to 表示试探的口气。

If you were (was) to do something like that I would not marry you.

Would have done, should have done 两种用法也经常表示虚拟，意思是本应该做而没有做的事情。would 表示从客观上讲，而 should 表示从主观上讲。
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

LESSON TWENTY SIX

在某些表语从句及同位语从句中虚拟的用法

孙老师提示:

英语中，表示请求、要求、命令、建议等名词如advice, desire, decision, idea, instruction, order, plan, proposal, recommendation, request, requirement, suggestion, wish, resolution充当句子的主语而后面接表语从句或它们后面接同位语从句时用虚拟语气。其虚拟语气的结构为:

(should) + 动词原形。在美国英语中省略should直接用原形。

如:

- We followed his advice that we (should) ask our teacher for help.
  我们接受了他建议: 我们应该请求老师的帮助

- He told us his idea that he (should) go to university.
  他告诉我们他的想法: 他想上大学。

- His suggestion is that we (should) do our work more carefully.
  他的建议就是我们的工作更细心些。

注: should (would) have done表示过去本该做而没有做的事情。

在某些表语从句及同位语从句中虚拟的用法

阅读欣赏

(1)

- If there were dreams to sell, what would you buy?
  如果世上有卖梦想的，你会买什么梦呢？

- If it were not for Hopes, the Heart would break.
  若不是为了希望，心早就碎了。

(2)

If I were 21 and wanted to study medicine（医学）, I don’t think I would pack off（打包旅行）to school. ①I would get a job as an orderly（卫生员, 护工）in a hospital, carrying out bedpans（便盆）, if necessary, and look and listen. After a year or two of that, I might know what kind of
LESSON TWENTY SIX

www.teachersun.com

medicine I wanted to study. Maybe I would find that I preferred to become an expert in hormones, rather than a surgeon. I might even end up as a chemist or a maker of surgical equipment. I would see where the job led me.

If I were 21 and not scientifically inclined, I would not disdain a job selling plastic dishes, for instance, from house to house. Such a salesman would learn so much about people, more than I would have an opportunity to in a laboratory. He should make money and have fun. He might learn some new things about what people want to buy that would help the researcher, the designer or the manufacturer. It is not the job you take that matters so much, as what you do with it.

I heard the other day of a young demobilized serviceman who was embittered because his former employer gave him his old job back—sealing envelopes. Yet sealing envelopes is not a bad job. Some bright young man might derive an invention from it. Are envelopes made the way they should be or does an envelope look the way it does because we’re used to the way it looks? I don’t know. What about the glue, our methods of stamping and addressing?

What I am getting at is that some people are tempted to shoot too high. One way to find out what you want to do in life is to try all kinds of jobs. If you don’t like working in a filling station, try a store, an office, a shop, a farm. Not only will you find out what you want to do, but you will also pick up, as you go along, an amazing amount of useful information.

I know a young man who is uncertain whether to be a boat-builder or an accountant. I suggested, when he asked my advice, that he sit down at a typewriter and write two essays—one on the advantages of being a boat builder, the other on the advantages of an accountant. Then he should write two more on the disadvantages of each one, and study what he has written. One never knows what is in his mind until he gets busy and lets it out.

A lot of people seem to think that a man learns only in his teens. Boys get this impression from their elders and, on emerging from the armed services at the age of 22 or 23, imagine themselves too old to take up such a noble science as, for example, medicine.

I was in my early 70’s when I studied medicine, not for a degree but to enable me better to experiment with a “fever medicine” which we invented in our laboratories. It is used to cure or alleviate certain types of disease with heat therapy.

Two years ago I took up hydrogen-electric welding, and became a pretty good welder. I was trying to find a means of eliminating the sputter. I relate this in no spirit of boastfulness. I just want youngsters to know that they are never too old to learn. Even at our best, we use just a tiny bit of our brains.

We are making more and more new things. The more we make, the more will work and the more people will buy. Employment will snowball. There are more opportunities today in this land than there have ever been. They are increasing in number and I think they are infinite.

The older I get, the more I realize that the highest good is the good of the people. If I were to choose an occupation again, I should consider three things: How well it served the public; how much fun there was in it; and, of course, whether it’s financial reward would meet my need.

① pack off to school 打铺盖卷去上学
② 该句是强调句型，原句应是The job you take matters not so much, as what you do with it. 句子 not…so much…that…是习惯用法，意思是“与其说…不如说…”因强调not，用了It is not…
用虚拟语气填空。
1. If only it ___ (be) warmer now?
2. He looks as if he ___ (lose).
3. I wish the semester ___ (be) over but we ___ (still get) a month to go.
4. If I ___ (go) to visit the museum, I ___ (concentrate) on one exhibit for the day.
5. If Rebecca ___ (know) I was in town she ___ (stop) by.
6. I ___ (read) the instructions more carefully.
7. If we ___ (call) the taxi right away, we ___ (be) there on time yesterday.
8. I ___ (change) dormitories if I ___ (can).
9. If only this rain ___ (stop)!
10. How I wish the school term ___ (be) over.
11. What ___ you ___ (do) if you ___ (have) one million dollars.
12. If only I ___ (read) the books which our teacher recommended before the examination?
13. I never thought he ___ (refuse).
14. He suggest that the meeting ___ (hold) this evening.
15. It is high time he ___ (go) to school.

用所给的动词填空，注意哪些句子应使用虚拟，哪些不用，如何使用虚拟。
1. If it ___ (not rain) tomorrow, I think I ___ (attend) the club meeting.
2. If I ____ (have) time tomorrow, I ____ (go) to the beauty parlor.
3. Suppose you ____ (can not go) on the trip, how ____ you ____ (feel)?
4. What ____ (be) your reaction if I told you I ____ (can not go) with you?
5. If I ____ (go) with you now, I ____ (have) to get my father’s permission.
6. Everything ____ (be) all right if you ____ (not say) that yesterday.
7. If I ____ (ask) for direction earlier, I ____ (not get) lost.
8. ____ he ____ (see) you if you ____ (not introduce) yourself to him last time?
9. I wish you ____ (finish) your work the next day, as I ____ (ask) you to.
10. ____ I ____ (know) you didn’t have any money, I ____ (not marry) you.
11. If you ____ (be) to attend the formal dance, what ____ you ____ (wear)?
12. It is necessary that a ticket agent ____ (inform) his passengers of the departure time of flight.
13. I wish my father ____ (agree), but he didn’t.
14. He ____ (speak) to me as if I ____ (be) dead. I don’t like him.
15. It’s time you ____ (be) in bed.
16. It’s unthinkable that he ____ (resign).
17. It was silly of me not to marry her, I wish I ____ (marry) her.
18. I’m sorry I mentioned it to her, I wish I ____ (not mention) it.
19. He never learned English at all when he was young. He wish he ____ (learn) English.

课堂练习（3）

（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

选择

1. ____ , the crops would be saved.
   A. Should it rain         B. If it rain
   C. If it will rain        D. Will it rain

2. He ____ not in the school yesterday, otherwise he ____ to the meeting this afternoon.
   A. were, would come       B. is, will not come
   C. was, would come        D. was, will come

3. I have to learn English hard so that I ____ go aboard.
   A. will                    B. shall              C. may                  D. would

4. He talks as if he ____ the classroom, but everyone knows who did it.
   A. has clean              B. had cleaned
   C. will clean             D. would clean

5. He insisted that he ____ a plane to Beijing.
   A. should have taken      B. takes
6. He______ her if I had known she had money.
   A. would have married  B. has married  
   C. will marry  D. marries.

7. Had electronic computers not been invented, many problems on space flight_____.
   A. would not have solved  B. could not solve
   C. can not be solved  D. could not have been solved

8. If he_________ to the teacher carefully in the class yesterday, he_________ his homework well now.
   A. listens, would do  B. listened, would do
   C. had listened, will do  D. had listened, could do

9. I felt as if my heart _______ beating.
   A. stopped  B. had stopped  C. stops  D. stop

10. __________ no electronic computers, there would have been no artificial satellites or rockets.
    A. Had there been  B. If there were
    C. If there should be  D. If there are

11. It is our wish that he _______ what he pleases.
    A. do  B. dose  C. will  D. did

12. I proposed that the suggestion _______ at once.
    A. should discussed  B. would be discussed
    C. be discussed  D. should have been discussed

13. He______ the letter but he_________ busy recently.
    A. would answer, is
    B. would have answered, were
    C. would have answered, has been
    D. would have answered, had been

14. Without water, there______ no plants.
    A. would have  B. would be
    C. were to be  D. were

15. Had she been given some information, she______ the question.
    A. could answer  B. has answered
    C. had answered  D. could have answered
16. I wish I __________.
   A. will succeed               B. should succeed
   C. succeeded                  D. succeed

17. If she had taken care of herself at the time she __________ now.
   A. will not be sick           B. would not be sick
   C. will not have been sick    D. was not sick

18. Without the invention of modern rockets, there _______ possibility that a satellite could be launched to the space.
   A. would be no               B. will be no
   C. is not                   D. were not

19. Her suggestion is that the electronic device ________ at once.
   A. will test                  B. will be tested
   C. should test               D. should be tested

20. Their resolution is that extra-curriculum activities ________ part of their school life.
   A. have been made            B. be made
   C. should made               D. were made

21. He must have had an accident, or he ________ then.
   A. would have been here      B. had to be here
   C. should be here            D. would be here

22. It was essential that the application forms ________ back before the deadline (截止日期).
   A. must be sent              B. would be sent
   C. be sent                   D. were went

23. If the whole operation ________ beforehand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost.
   A. was not planned           B. has not been planned
   C. were not planned          D. had not been planned

24. __________ for your laziness, you could have finished the assignment by now.
   A. Had it not been           B. It were not
   C. Weren’t it                D. Had not it been

25. It’s necessary ________ the dictionary immediately.
   A. that he will return       B. that he returned
   C. that he return            D. that he has to return
26. We desire that the tour leader inform us immediately of any change in plans.
   A. inform               B. informs               C. informed               D. has informed

27. Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I followed your advice.
   A. follow               B. had followed         C. would follow        D. have followed

28. We have hoped to start our own business, but we never had enough money.
   A. have hoped         B. hope                      C. had hoped             D. should hope

29. The manager of the hotel requests that their guests not to play loud music after 11:00 p.m.
   A. not to play loud music               B. shouldn’t play loud music
   C. don’t play loud music                  D. couldn’t play loud music

30. I wish I could have slept longer this morning, but I had to get up and come to class.
   A. could have slept G. slept
   C. might have slept Tun. have slept

31. That tree looked as if it hadn’t been watered for a long time.
   A. hasn’t watered B. didn’t water
   C. hadn’t been watered D. wasn’t watered

32. It is politely requested by the hotel management that radio not be played after 11 o’clock at night.
   A. were not played               B. not play
   C. not be played                  D. did not play

33. Jean doesn’t want to work right away because she thinks that if she had got a job she probably wouldn’t be able to see her friends very often.
   A. has to get B. were to get
   C. had got D. could have got

34. Had they arrived before we depart the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful dinner party.
   A. Had they arrived               B. Would they arrive
   C. Were they arriving            D. Were they to arrive

35. If only the committee would approve the regulations and put them into effect as soon as possible.
   A. approve                  B. will approve
   C. can approve               D. would approve

36. Had he worked harder, he must have got through the exams.
   A. must have got through       B. would have got through
   C. permitted are freshmen     D. could get through

37. I’m sure he is up to the job if only he would give his mind to it.
   A. if only                   B. in case                  C. until                    D. unless
LESSON TWENTY SIX

38. I’d rather you _______ make any comment on the issue for the time being.
   A. don’t        B. wouldn’t      C. didn’t       D. shouldn’t

39. We are all for your proposal that the discussion ______.
   A. be put off  B. was put off  C. should put off  D. is to put off

40. “You are very selfish. It’s high time you _______ that you are not the most important person in the world.” Edgar said to his boss angrily.
   A. realized    B. have realized  C. realize       D. should realize

41. If I hadn’t stood under the ladder to catch you when you fell, you _______ now.
   A. wouldn’t be smiling  B. couldn’t have smiled  C. won’t smile    D. didn’t smile

42. As Commander-in Chief on the armed forces, I have directed that all measures ______ for our defense.
   A. be taken        B. would be taken  C. to be taken    D. had been taken

课堂练习（4）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 如果我昨天知道你要去，我也会去野餐（go out on a picnic）。
2. 纽约的工人要求（demand）他们的工资应该增加（increase）。
3. 要是你不熬夜（stay up）到这么晚，会对你的身体有好处。
4. 他昨天如果没有吃药，现在病就不会好了。
5. 我很惊讶他没有认识到自己的错误。
6. 幸亏他受过良好教育（but for his good education），否则他就得不到那份工作。
7. 当时要是医生在，我母亲就不会死了。
8. 教授坚持每个学生要把这课背下来（learn something by heart）。
9. 即使我昨天在这，我也不会把这个消息告诉你。
10. 到了我们回家的时间了。
11. 当时要是医生在，我母亲就不会死了。
12. 如果他使用新方法，他可能会取得试验的成功。

重要提示
掌握虚拟语气，最好的办法就是记住在本该用的时态上向后退一步，既表示虚拟，现在时退过去时，将来时退过去将来时，过去时退过去完成时，过去将来时退过去将来完成时。这样，在虚拟语气上就不会再犯任何错误，即使遇上错综虚拟语气，也不会错。最后，记住几个特殊用法，虚拟语气就算基本掌握了。
情态动词与动词习惯用法

一、must

1. **must do (be)** 表示对现在或将来情况的推测，是英语中语气最为肯定的推测。
   - Judging from the smell, the food **must be** good.
     从气味上判断，这食物想必很好的。
   - The man over there **must be** Mr. Smith.
     那边那人想必是史密斯先生。

2. **must be doing** 表示对现在或将来正在进行的情况进行推测。
   - At this time, my daughter **must be** reading her novels.
     这时，想必我女儿正在读小说吧。

3. **must have done (been)** 表示对过去情况的推测。
   - The bottle is nearly empty. You **must have drunk** a lot.
     瓶都要空了。你肯定喝了不少。
   - He fell asleep immediately last night, he **must have been** tired.
     昨天晚上他立刻就入睡，一定是太累了。

二、should/ought to

“should/ought to have done (been).” 表示过去应该做而没有做，意为“本应该做某事而事实上没做”。否定形式表示过去不该做某事却做了。

- You **should have got** up earlier.
  你本应该早起的。
- She **ought to have seen** a doctor a week ago.
  她一周前就应该去看医生。

注意：ought to(客观)只是在语气上比should(主观)强。
三、 **could**

**could have done(been)** 表示过去时间里某个动作或某种情况本来能发生，但事实上并未发生。

- I **could have lent** you money. Why didn’t you ask me?
  我本来能借给你钱，为什么不向我借呢？
- You **could have been** more careful.
  你本来能更认真些的。

四、 **had better** 和 **would rather, would sooner…than.**

**had better** 和 **would rather, would sooner... than** 后直接跟动词原形。

- You **had better** hand in your homework after class.
  你**最好**下课后交作业。
- I **would rather play** football than swim.
  我**宁愿**踢足球也不愿游泳。
- I **would sooner die than** marry you.
  我**宁愿死也不**肯嫁你。

注意：**had better =’d better; would rather =’d rather; would sooner =’d sooner**

注意！！！

In fact, I **would rather watch TV at home than see films.**

**d rather** 后跟从句时用一般过去时。

I’d rather you **gave** me nothing.

五、 **May**

置于句首表示祝愿

- **May** you both **be happy**!
  祝二位幸福！

课堂练习（1）

(详细讲解请登录www.teachersun.com)

1. I’m sorry I couldn’t get in touch with him before he left, I ______ him earlier.
   A. had a telephone           B. have phoned
   C. should have phoned        D. should be phoned
2. I believe he ____ an accident, otherwise he would have arrived on time.
   A. would have had  B. could have had  
   C. should have had  D. must have had

3. He abandoned a career that _____ to his becoming one of the most influential people in the world.
   A. could have led  B. will lead  
   C. should have led  D. must lead

4. You ought ______ the matter to the manager the day before yesterday.
   A. to report  B. to have reported  C. to reporting  
   D. have reported

5. I can’t find the recorder in the room. It ______ by somebody.
   A. must have taken  B. may have taken  
   C. may have been taken  D. could have been taken

区别动词后的to是不定式符号，还是介词

一般来说，在短语或词组中的介词to必须个别去记忆和辨识。常见be accustomed to（习惯于），adapt to（适于），attend to（专心，注意，照顾），confess to（承认），devote to（献身于），object to（反对），be opposed to（反对），be used to（习惯于），look forward to（盼望）等。

例如:
- Fred confessed to stealing the jewels（宝石）.
- I am looking forward to seeing you again.
- My daughter is used to sleeping with the light on.
- I prefer reading books to doing things.
- He takes to（喜欢，适应）having a cold bath in the morning.
- I object to being treated like this.
- He devoted much of his time to studying English.

介词in的省略与动名词

⑴ spend…(in) doing表示：“花费”。例如:
- I spent two hours (in) writing the letter.
  我花了两个小时写信。
- John spent a week (in) preparing for the final examination.
  约翰花了一个星期时间准备期末考试。
(2) **have**后接表示“逆境”或“顺境”的词时，其后的in也经常省略而继续接动名词。

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{have} & \quad \text{difficulty} \\
& \quad \text{trouble} \\
& \quad \text{a hard time} \\
& \quad \text{a good time} \\
& + (\text{in}) + \text{doing}
\end{align*}
\]

- They **had difficulty (in) communicating** with each other.
  他们彼此之间的沟通有困难。

**下列惯用语中要用动名词**

1. **cannot help doing** (= cannot but do) “禁不住，忍不住”
2. **It is no use doing** (= It is of no use to do) “无用”
3. **be worth doing** “值得”
4. **be busy doing** “忙于”
5. **feel like doing** “想要”
6. **What (or how) about doing** “如何”
7. **It goes without saying that** “用不着说”

- We **cannot help laughing**.
  我们忍不住大笑起来。
- It is **no use advising him to give up smoking**.
  劝他戒烟是无用的。
- The movie **is worth watching**.
  这部电影值得看看。
- John **is busy doing** his homework.
  约翰忙着做作业呢。
- I don’t **feel like eating** anything.
  我什么也不想吃。
- **What (How) about going** to the movies tonight?
  今晚去看电影怎么样？
- **It goes without saying** that teachers know more than students.
  用不着说，老师比学生知道的多。
四选一或找出错误的划线部份

1. Mary regretted ______ to John’s birthday party last Sunday.
   A. not going                         B. not to go
   C. not having been going             D. not to be going

2. Nancy had a great deal of trouble to concentrate on her work because of the noise in the next room.
   A                                      B                                    C                        D

3. I spent half an hour ______ this difficult math problem.
   A. having worked on                  B. to work on
   C. on work                           D. working on

4. The old man is used to ______ early in the morning.
   A. exercise                        B. exercising             C. exercised               D. exercises

5. Don’t forget ______ the window before leaving the room.
   A. to have closed              B. to close                 C. having closed        D. closing

6. The boy denied ______ any one in the building when ______ by the teacher shortly after the incident. (2001年)
   A              B                                                   C                                         D

7. He suggested ______ a lecture given by Professor White on English language learning.
   A. me to attend                                                   B. my attending
   C. my attention                                                   D. me attending

8. One of the benefits of the new model is that it is easier ______ than the old one.
   A. operating                      B. to be operated       C. to operate             D. operated

9. In winter, animals have a hard time ______ anything to eat.
   A. to find                           B. to finding              C. to find out             D. finding

10. We look forward to ______ to the opening ceremony.
    A. invite                            B. be invited             C. having been invited       D. being invited

本课要点

1、牢记情态动词用法。
2、牢记动词习惯用法。
LESSON TWENTY EIGHT

主谓一致、倒装句及强调句

导言

英语中主谓一致的基本原则在于：尽可能保持主谓在语意上的统一，这就是通常说的“语意优先于语法”。

倒装与强调句的基本原则是——当特别强调某一部分时，将其前置，并尽可能的突出谓语动词，这就形成了倒装与强调句的区别，即：强调句所强调部分通常较短，不变化动词，如出现个别强调部分较长的情况，需用特别的形式来表现。而倒装句所强调部分较长，所以将谓语动词变化成疑问句形式，以突出谓语动词。

主语与谓语动词的一致

(1) 复数主语当作“单一的数量”看时，谓语用单数形式；否则用复数。

- The thousand dollars is a big sum.
  一千美元是个大数。
- Two thousand dollars are divided among them.
  两千兀由他们来分
- Three years is too long a period to wait.
  三年等起来太久了。

(2) 名词physics, maths, economics, politics, news (新闻), means (方法), way (工厂), measles [医]麻疹等一般被认为形式是复数，意思是单数，它们做主语的时候动词一般用单数形式。

- The eight o’clock news is on Channel 5.
  八点的新闻是在五频道。
- Measles is an infectious disease.
  麻疹是一种传染病。

(3) 集合名词family, committee（委员会）, club, team, government, audience (听众，观众)等，代表集合体时一般用单数谓语；代表集合体的组成分子时用复数谓语。

- The committee does not meet today.
  委员会今天没开会。
- The committee are at dinner.
  委员们正在吃饭。
- His family is not large.
  他家人不多。
● His family are five
他家有五口人。

(4) a person of, many a person, a series of, a kind of, a pair of 等用来修饰主语时，谓语动词用单数。

● A series of lectures is holding next week.
下周有一系列的演讲。

(5) half, part, majority 以及百分比或分数词修饰名词做主语时，谓语动词的数与名词的数一致。

● Half of students have gone to the countryside.
半数学生去了农村。
● Half of our work is done.
我们干了一半活。
● Two-thirds of steel has been used up to now.
到目前为止，已经用了三分之二的钢材。
● The majority of these birds fly to the south for winter.
大多数鸟飞到南方过冬了
● The majority of the homework is useful.
大多数作业是有用的。

(6) 当主语是 a number of +复数名词时，谓语动词用复数；当主语是 the number of +名词时，谓语动词用单数。

● A great number of students want to go to Harvard.
很多学生都想上哈佛。
● The number of applicants has increased.
应征的人数增加了。

注：a large amount of 也表示大量，但它用来修饰不可数名词，所以做主语时，谓语用单数。
● A large amount of money was stolen yesterday.
昨天一大笔钱被盗了

(7) 主语前有 many a（许多），more than one（不止一个）修饰时，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

● Many a singer and dancer is to attend our evening party.
许多歌唱家和舞蹈家将参加我们的晚会。
● More than one person was involved in the case.
不止一个人卷入到这个案子中来。
Either Bill or I am to go.
Neither he nor we were responsible.
Not only you but also I am right.

You as well as he are wrong.
The bat together with the balls was stolen.
Nobody but you has made a mistake.

In our country every boy and every girl has the right to receive education.

Reading English newspaper is a good way of improving your English.

What they have done in Shenzhen has draw world-wide attention.

To believe in men is the first step toward helping them.

What you eat and how much you exercise are two important factors in weight loss program.
LESSON TWENTY EIGHT

课堂练习（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

主谓一致典型试题

四选一或找出错误的划线部分。

1. When and where the new hospital will be built ______ a mystery.
   A. to remain                     B. remains                 C. remain                   D. is remaining

2. The news ______ coming from different parts of the world are often extremely discouraging these days.
   A                        B                                  C                  D

3. The salesman told me ______ that a good pair of glasses ______ were supposed to last at least 3 to 4 years.
   A                                         B                       C         D

4. Nearly ______ three quarters of the surface of the earth are covered with water, and ______ there would be even ______ less land if the polar icecaps were melt.
   A                                         B                                            C

5. Neither John nor I ______ able to persuade Richard’s grandfather to attend the wedding.
   A. am                               B. are                        C. are to be                D. is

6. Many a person in this circumstance ______ for a long break.
   A. have hoped                  B. has hoped              C. are hoping            D. has been hoped

7. The teacher, as well as all his students, ______ by the dancer’s performance.
   A. was impressed             B. had impressed       C. impressed             D. were impressed

8. The director and manager ______ of the department are very strict with the employees.
   A                      B                                     C                     D

9. A number of ______ errors made by him was surprising.
   A                      B        C                            D
LESSON TWENTY EIGHT

倒装

（1）句首是以下副词或短语时需倒装：out, up, here, there, down, off, often, many, a time

- **Here** is the new book for you.
- **Down** jumped the burglar (窃贼) from the tenth floor when the policeman pointed his pistol (手枪) at him.
- **Often** did we ask her not to be late for school.
- **Many** a time has she been here.

（2）**only** + 状语（副词或介词短语或从句）起首的句子

例如：
- **Only** with organization can the wisdom of the collective be given full pay.
- **Only** through sheer (完全) luck did he manage to get some tickets.
- **Only** yesterday did he realize there was danger.
- **Only** when I finished the work did I go to the movie.

（3）句首是含有否定副词和否定短语时需要倒装：hardly, little, scarcely (几乎不), seldom, **never**, rarely, **at no time** (在任何时候都不), **in no sense** (一点也不), **not until**, **not sooner... than, hardly (scarcely)... when..., not only...but also...** 例如：

- **Never** have I found him in such a good mood.
- **Not only was** he good at English but also at maths.
- **Not until** yesterday did he finish the work.
- **Hardly could** I believe it true.
- **Seldom have** I met him recently.
- **Little does** he know what may happen.
- **In no sense did** he know the importance of the fact.

（4）**so, neither** 和 **nor** 置于句首，句子要倒装。**Nor** 和 **neither** 可以互换。

- **No** many people enjoyed his speech, **neither did** we.
- She didn’t like her new dress, **nor did** she like her new shoes.
- Henry had a lot of toys, **so did** his brother.

注意和下句比较：
— Are you a student? — So am I. 你是学生吗？我是。
— It is cold today. — So it is. 今天天冷。是很冷。

注：对比前面句子可知，so置于句首时，表示前一种情况也适用于后一种情况时就用倒装。若当so引出的句子是对上文的内容加以证实或肯定时，不用倒装。

(5) as引导的让步状语从句中使用倒装句。

- Old as he is, he still works in the field.
  尽管他老了，但是还在下地干活。
- Teacher as Mr. Smith is, he does not know the answer.
  史密斯先生虽然老了，但也不知答案。

(6) if引导的虚拟条件句中如果包含should, had, were，则可以将if省略而将这些助动词提到主语之前，构成倒装句。

- Had I known your telephone number, I would have called you.
  要是我知道你的电话号码，我就会打电话给你了。
- Were I in your position, I would try my best to help the poor.
  若是我处在你的地位，我将尽力帮助穷人。
- Should you fail in the test, you could try again.
  万一你考试失败了，你可以再试一次。

课堂练习（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

四选一或找出错误的划线部分。

1. Nowhere else in the world ______ more attractive scenery than in Switzerland.
   A. you can find                      B. is found
   C. can you find                     D. has been found

2. Young ______ he is, he knows what is the right thing to do.
   A. that                              B. as                              C. although                           D. however

3. Not until I reminded him for the third time ______ working and looked up.
   A. that he stopped                  B. does he stopped
   C. did he stop                      D. that he stopped
4. Not always ______ they want to.
   A. people can do what     B. people cannot do what
   C. can people do what     D. can’t people do what

5. At no time and under no circumstances ______ China will be the first to use nuclear weapons.
   A. ______   B. ______   C. ______   D. ______

6. So little ______ about stock exchange that the lecture was completely beyond me.
   A. did I know     B. I had known     C. I knew     D. was I known

7. ______ you were busy, I wouldn’t have bothered you with my questions.
   A. If I realized     B. Had I realized
   C. Did I have realized that     D. As I realized

一、强调句的基本形式

**It** (was) +被强调部分 +that(who)…在运用这一结构时要注意以下几点:

(1) 主句的谓语只能是is或was。
(2) 当被强调部分是句子的主语，且主语是人时才能用who，其它用that。
(3) 强调结构中的连词that或who都不能省略。
(4) 当强调until引导的从句时要将until原对应主句中的not提到until之前，即变成强调句型，that引导的从句要用肯定句。
(5) 强调结构不能强调谓语。

- It was Tom who broke the window with a stone yesterday.
  用石头打破窗户的就是汤姆
- It was the window that Tom broke with a stone yesterday.
  昨天汤姆用石头打破的是窗户
- It was with a stone that Tom broke the window yesterday.
  昨天汤姆是用石头打破窗户的
- It was yesterday that Tom broke the window with a stone.
  是昨天汤姆用石头打破了窗户
- It was not until she arrived in class that she realized she had forgotten her book.
  直到她进了教室，她才意识到她忘了带书。

二、用助动词或强调谓语动词
1. It is because she is very devoted to her students ______ she is respected by them.
   A. that                                B. which                        C. what                      D. who

2. It is from my grandparents _____ I learned a lot.
   A. who                                B. whom                              C. that                        D. which

3. It was not until it got dark ______ working.
   A. that they stopped                           B. when they stopped
   C. did they stop                           D. that they didn’t stop

### 课堂练习（3）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. It is because she is very devoted to her students ______ she is respected by them.
   A. that                                B. which                        C. what                      D. who

2. It is from my grandparents _____ I learned a lot.
   A. who                                B. whom                              C. that                        D. which

3. It was not until it got dark _____ working.
   A. that they stopped                           B. when they stopped
   C. did they stop                           D. that they didn’t stop

### 一、附加疑问句的构成

附加疑问句由两部分构成：陈述句+附加句。一般的规则是：前肯定，后否定；前否定，后肯定

- They are in the room, aren’t they?
- They are not in the room, are they?
- They were in the room, weren’t they?
- They haven’t been in the room, have they?

### 二、陈述句部分有表示否定的副词

若陈述句部分已有表示否定的hardly, scarcely, never, seldom等词时，附加问句部分要用肯定。

- She scarcely cares for anything, does she?
- He seldom writes home, does he?

### 三、祈使句的附加问句

(1) 祈使句的附加问句一般用“will you”。例如：

- Have some coffee, will you?
- Don’t make a noise, will you?
LESLIE TWENTY EIGHT

LESSON TWENTY EIGHT

www.teachersun.com

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

课堂练习（4）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

附加疑问句典型试题

1. You never told me you have seen the film, ____?
   A. had you       B. didn’t you       C. did you        D. weren’t you

2. Don’t forget to write to me, ________?
   A. will you      B. didn’t you      C. are you       D. don’t you

3. Please let us have more time, __________.
   A. shall we       B. will you       C. won’t

4. I suppose you’re not serious, ________?
   A. do I         B. don’t I         C. are you       D. aren’t you

5. I don’t think you’ve heard of him before, _______?
   A. don’t        B. do I        C. have you       D. haven’t you

6. She scarcely cares for anything, ________?
   A. doesn’t     B. does she     C. is she     D. isn’t she

四、宾语从句的附加问句

当suppose, think, believe, expect等动词后接宾语从句，且主句的主语是第一人称时，句末的附加疑问句部分的人称与宾语从句的人称一致，并且宾语从句是肯定，附加问句用否定;宾语从句是否定，附加问句就用肯定。

- I suppose you’re not serious, are you?
- I believe that she is innocent, isn’t she?

注：当否定转移到此类句子的主句部分时，反意疑问句部分用肯定的形式。如：

- I don’t believe that she knows it, does she?
课堂练习答案
LESSON ONE

句子的三种模式（BE与THERE BE句型）课堂练习答案

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、教室里的那个人是 一个 从英国来的老师。
   The man in the classroom is a teacher from England.

2、二楼教室里桌子上的钱不是我的。
   The money on the desk in the classroom on the second floor is not mine.

3、我的家乡在两山之间的峡谷里。
   My hometown is in the valley between two hills.

4、拿着刀的那个贼就在你的卧室里的门后面。
   The thief with a knife is behind the door in your bedroom.

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、医院里的那个傻子是从英国来的。
   The fool in the hospital is from England.

2、那个从英国来的傻子在医院里。
   The fool from England is in the hospital.

3、教室里靠窗户的桌子上的那台电脑是新的。
   The computer on the desk near the window in the classroom is new.

4、你们班里的那个漂亮的女孩子是个贼。
   The beautiful girl of your class is a thief.
LESSON TWO -- KEY
www.teachersun.com

1. Are there five doctors from America in the hospital near your school?

2. Is the money near the computer on the desk in your bedroom your sister’s?

3. Is the old wallet in the box under the bed in the bedroom yours?

4. Is the blue bird near the red apple in the tree from the south?

5. Is the fat lady in front of the hotel the reporter from Hong Kong?

LESSON TWO
句子的三种模式（DO句型）

1. Tom does his homework in the reading room every evening.

2. Is the man in WC on the second floor from England?

3. Is the village in the picture on the wall near the window in the living room your hometown?
4. 你前面的那个人是一个从英国来的贼。
   The man in front of you is a thief from England.

5. 那个从美国来的小偷每年在北京市偷一百辆自行车。
   The thief from America steals 100 bikes in Beijing every year.

6. 我不喜欢你们班的那个老师。
   I don’t like the teacher of your class.

7. 学校花园里的大树下的人是你爸爸吗？
   Is the man under the big tree in the garden in the school your father?

8. 每天夜里12点你爸爸和你妈妈在客厅里看电视吗？
   Do your father and mother watch TV in the living room at 12 every night?

Dear Bob:

I’m so glad to learn that you’re coming in September. I’ve found a place for you. It’s a small flat of 25 square metres, with a bedroom, a bathroom and a kitchen. In the bedroom, there is a bed, a sofa, a desk and a chair. The rent is 500 Yuan per month. The flat is in a building on Fangcao Street, which is not far from Xinhua Chinese School. Bus No. 11 can take you straight to the school. In fact, it is only one stop. Do you think you’d like it? If not, I can try and find another place for you. Just let me know.

LESSON THREE

四种一般时与特殊疑问句

1. Where did John teach?
2. What does Tom study?
3. When (What time) will the meeting begin?
4. Why was she happy?
5. When were they neighbors?
6. How many times (How often) a month did you go to the cinema?
7. When can he finish the job?
8. Who sold the cotton by weight?
LESSON FOUR -- KEY

孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

LESSON FOUR

四种进行时态

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

课堂练习答案（1）

时态选择。（该题全部取自于高考原卷）

1. The last time I _______ Jane, she _______ cotton in the fields.
   A. had seen; was picking          B. saw; picked
   C. had seen; picked                D. saw; was picking

注解: the last time在此做连词, 引导状语从句, 该句应译成: 上次看到他时, 他在地里采棉花。谓语动词用的是see, 因此该句给我们一个短暂或某一时刻的感觉。应用进行态, 进行态常用来表示动作的暂时性。

2. We _______ all surprised when he made it clear that he _______ office soon.
   A. leaves                          B. would leave
   C. left                           D. had left

3. --Can I join the club, Dad?
   --You can when you _______ a bit older.
   A. get                             B. will get
   C. are getting                    D. will have got

注解: A. 主从句都是将来时, 从句用一般时, 主句用将来时。注意can, must, may, to be able to这些情态动词都是表示将来时。

4. --Do you like the material?
   --Yes, it _______ very soft.
   A. is feeling                    B. felt
   C. feels                        D. is felt

注解: feel是系动词。

5. I don’t really work here; I _______ until the new secretary arrives.
   A. just help out                  B. have just helped out
   C. am just helping out            D. will just help out

6. --Your phone number again? I _______ quite catch it.
   --It’s 9568442.
   A. didn’t                     B. couldn’t
   C. don’t                      D. can’t

注解: 进行态表示暂时性。

7. I don’t think Jim saw me; he _______ into space.
   A. just stared                   B. was just staring
   C. has just stared                D. had just stared

8. --Can I help you, sir?
--Yes. I bought this radio here yesterday, but it___.
   A. didn’t work     B. won’t work
   C. can’t work      D. isn’t working

注解：表示目前的状况。

9. I first ___ Lisa three years ago. She___ at a radio shop at the time.
   A. has worked   B. was working
   C. had been working     D. had worked

注解：at the time表示一个短暂的时间，所以用进行态。

10. --Alice, why didn’t you come yesterday?
    --I___, but I had an unexpected visitor.
       A. had         B. would      C. was going to     D. did

注解：此句用was going to或would都应该对的，但是was going to有打算的意思，而would表示将要的意思，第一句看出他实际上没有去成，was going to只是一种打算，所以应选C。

11. --Is this raincoat yours?
    --No, mine___ there behind the door.
       A. is hanging   B. has hung     C. hangs           D. hung

注解：特别强调目前的状态，用进行时。

LESSON FIVE

三个句型复习与宾语从句

注解：详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com

1、孙老师经常说他会有钱的。
   Teacher Sun often (usually) says that he will be rich.

2、我妈妈昨天告诉我，我爸爸要去美国。
   学生错句 My mother told me that my father would be go to America yesterday.
   正确句子 Yesterday, my mother told me that my father would go to America.

3、你知道昨天你们教室里有五个钱包吗？
   学生错句 Do you know that you classroom had five wallets in you classroom yesterday?
   正确句子 Do you know that there were five wallets in your classroom yesterday?
4. 你相信你们班长明年会成为你们班最好的学生吗？
   正确句子 Do you believe that your monitor will be the best student of your class next year?

5. 我妈妈希望明年我们能买一个大房子。
   学生错句 My mother hopes that we will be buy a big house next year.
   正确句子 My mother hopes that we can buy a big house next year.

6. 你知道昨天那个从美国来的老师在学校里把那个从英国来的老师给杀了吗？
   学生错句 Do you know that the teacher from America would kill the teacher from England in the school yesterday?
   正确句子 Do you know that the teacher from America killed the teacher from England in the school yesterday?

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 你知道你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天尿床（wet the bed）了吗？
   Do you know that the beautiful girl of your class wetted the bed yesterday?

2. 从美国来的那个老师昨天告诉我他不回美国了。
   Yesterday, the teacher from America told me that he would not go back to America.

3. 你相信你们班的老师明天打算在王府井大街书店买一千本书吗？
   Do you believe that the teacher of your class is going to buy 1000 books in the book store in Wang fujing street tomorrow?

4. 你认为昨天谁吃了我的包子？
   Do you think who ate my Baozi yesterday?

5. 你相信十年前你们班长曾经游泳横渡黄河吗？
   Do you believe that your monitor swam across the Yellow River 10 years ago?

6. 我认为孙老师过去是最好的老师，现在是最好的老师，将来也一定是最好的老师。
   I think that Teacher Sun was the best teacher, he is the best teacher and he will be the best teacher in the future.
7. 昨天你们班的老师告诉我，他打算娶你们班长的妹妹。
    Yesterday, your teacher told me that he was going to marry your monitor’s sister.

8. 我不知道我父亲明年是否会去美国。
    I do not know whether my father will go to America.

课堂练习答案（3）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 你知道你们班的那个很帅的男孩有多少个女朋友吗？
    Do you know how many girl friends the handsome boy of your class has?

2. 你相信我们学校明年会有200个老师吗？
    学生错句 Do you believe our school has 200 teachers?
    正确句子 Do you believe that there will be 200 teachers in our school next year?

3. 你认为明年我们学校会有多少位从美国来的老师？
    学生错句 Do you think how many teachers from America in the school next year?
    学生错句 Do you think how many teachers from America will there be in the school next year?
    正确句子 Do you think how many teachers from America there will be in our school next year?

孙老师提示:
练习最好每做几题，就去对一下正确答案，以便即时纠正错误。

1. 去年北京有一万辆汽车。
    There were 10,000 cars in Beijing last year.

2. 去年北京市有多少辆汽车？
    How many cars were there in Beijing last year?
3. Do you know how many cars there were in Beijing last year?

4. How many books is your monitor going to buy in the bookshop tomorrow?

5. Do you know how many books your monitor is going to buy in the bookshop tomorrow?

6. What were your father and your mother doing in the living room at 8 last evening?

7. Do you know what your father and your mother were doing in the living room at 8 last evening?

8. How many books will there be in the library of your school next year?

9. Do you know how many books there will be in the library next year?

10. Who is the fattest girl student in your class?

11. Do you know Who is the fattest girl student in your class?

12. Who is the most beautiful girl student in your school?

13. Do you know Who is the most beautiful girl student in your school?

14. Why did your monitor steal your teacher’s wallet yesterday?

15. Do you know why your monitor stole your teacher’s wallet yesterday?

16. What did your father buy yesterday?

17. Do you know what your father bought?
18. Why is the sun bigger than the earth?

19. Do you know why the sun is bigger than the earth?

20. Why does your mother eat more than your father?

21. Do you know why your mother eats more than your father?

22. Where is your sister going to study English next year?

23. Do you know where your sister is going to study English next year?

1. Do you know why your teacher’s father beat him yesterday?

2. Do you know how the girl of your class becomes the best student of your class?

3. Do you know why the dog of his family bit you yesterday?

4. Do you know whose sister does your teacher loves?
   学生错句
   正确句子

5. My mother hopes that my father makes ten thousand Yuan every month.
6. 你认为你爸爸去年每月挣多少钱？
   学生错句  Do you think how much money made your father every month last year?
   正确句子  Do you think how much money your father made every month last year?

7. 我妈妈昨天问我我打算在哪学英语。
   Yesterday, my mother asked me where I was going to study English.

8. 你知道你们学校的图书馆去年有多少图书吗？
   Do you know how many books there were in the library of your school last year?

9. 你知道他的父亲什么时候死的吗？
   Do you know when his father died?

10. 你知道老鼠（mouse）为什么爱大米吗？
    Do you know why the mouse loves the rice?

11. 你知道你们老师明年打算写多少本书吗？
    Do you know how many books your teacher is going to write next year?

12. 你知道你们老师现在在哪吃午饭的吗？
    Do you know where your teacher is having lunch?

13. 你知道昨天晚上7点半你爸爸和你妈妈在客厅里做什么呢？
    Do you know what your father and mother were doing in the living room at half past seven last night?

14. 那个医生告诉我他临时在这个医院帮忙。
    The doctor told me that he was helping in the hospital.

15. 你知道厨房里桌子上的瓶子里有多少油吗？
    Do you know how much oil there is in the bottle on the table in the kitchen?

16. 我不知道我爸爸明年是否去美国？
    I don’t know if my father is going to America next year.
LESSON SEVEN

基本句型复习

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 空瓶子响声大；满瓶不响；半瓶叮当。
2. 让金钱做你的仆人，不要让它成为主人。
3. 美酒、美人、赌博和欺骗使人倾家荡产。
4. 新加坡航空公司在客舱服务上投资6300万美元，占预算的59%。
5. 每张机票上都为旅客写明离港日期、时间、价格及航班号码等。
6. 太阳给我们强光，月亮仅给我们微弱的光。
7. 在民航运输中波音747被认为是最大的机型。
8. 飞机上的恐怖分子将许多旅客扣为人质。

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. We will give the boy the best education.
2. This air trip made us very happy.
3. CAAC appointed him general manager of the airline.
4. The airline provided every reservations agent with very good train.
5. The airline’s manuals were supplied employees by the airline.
6. British call this kind of airplane DC-3 or Dakota.
7. My grandfather is going to give the flowers to my grandmother.
8. We found out treasure in the chest in the sunken ship.
9. Have you seen our professor so angry?
10. Do you think money can make a man happy?
LESON EIGHT -- KEY
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语
www.teachersun.com

LESSON EIGHT
四种完成时态(1)
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、昨天他告诉我警察把他爹抓走了。
   Yesterday, he told me that the policemen had caught his father.

2、昨天你爸爸告诉我明年要挣一百万。
   Yesterday, your father told me that he was going to make one million dollars next year.

3、你知道谁把我的苹果吃了吗？
   Do you know who has eaten my apple?

4、你知道昨天谁把我的苹果吃了吗？
   Do you know who ate my apple yesterday?

5、我不相信他学过英语。
   I don’t believe that he has studied English.

6、你知道到2020年孙老师就教了多少年英语了吗？
   Do you know how long Teacher Sun will have taught English by 2020?

孙老师提示：
一定要熟背下例完成时态表。
Since 1990, I have been a teacher.
By 英语中用介词By来表示结止时间。
I will have been a teacher for 30 years by 2022.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>时态</th>
<th>句型</th>
<th>主系表</th>
<th>主谓宾</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>现在完成</td>
<td>have (has) been</td>
<td>have (has) done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去完成</td>
<td>had been</td>
<td>had done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>将来完成</td>
<td>will have been</td>
<td>will have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>过去将来完成</td>
<td>would have been</td>
<td>would have done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7、前年我妈妈告诉我自从2000年开始我就一直给我妈妈找麻烦。
   The year before last, my mother told me that I had made troubles for her since 2000.
8、昨天你们班的那个漂亮的女孩问我，谁把他们班的那个傻子杀了。
   Yesterday, the beautiful girl of your class asked me who had killed the fool of their class.

9、到去年年底为止，我爸爸攒了一百美元。
   By the end of last year, my father had saved one hundred dollars.

10、到现在为止我爸爸攒了一千美元。
    By now, my father has saved one thousand dollars.

11、到今年年底为止我爸爸将攒一万美元。
    By the end of this year, my father will have saved ten thousand dollars.

12、别告诉我妈妈我父亲到今年年底攒了多少美元。
    Don’t tell my mother how much dollars my father will have saved by the end of this year.

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

孙老师提示：
请大家认真对比答案，如发现错误，请对照本课讲解内容找出原因，务必扎实基础。

1、昨天他问我，自从2000年开始，你们班长在教室里捡了多少个钱包了。
   Yesterday, he asked me how many wallets your monitor had picked up in the classroom since 2000.

2、你知道那个从英国来的老师到今年年底就在中国住了多少年了吗?
   Do you know how many years the teacher from England will have lived in China by the end of this year?

3、我很高兴你昨天通过了考试。
   I’m glad that you passed the exam yesterday.

4、你知道谁把教室里的玻璃给打了吗?
   Do you know who has broken the glass in the classroom?

5、他昨天说，自从他出生以来他从未见过他父亲。
   Yesterday, he said that he had never seen (met) his father since he was born.

6、前天他告诉我，到今年年底为止，他就攒了一千美元了。
   The day before yesterday, he told me that he would have saved one thousand dollars by the end of this year.
1. He said that he had never been to Tibet. (他从未去过西藏Tibet).

2. He hasn’t written to me (他未给我写信) since he left Beijing.
3. He said that he would have done with (have used) my camera by the end of next month.（他下月底就不用我的照相机了）。

4. I hope that the rain will have stopped by tomorrow noon.（雨会在明天中午前停下来）。

5. By the end of that year he had collected more than a thousand Chinese stamps.（他已集了一千多张中国邮票）。

6. I really don’t know whether he has got to the laboratory or not.（他是否已经到了实验室）。

7. The boy knows that he must be braver and firmer after he has experienced such a thing.（在他经历了这样的事情之后）。

8. I could not remember whether he had paid for the dictionary.（他已经付了字典钱）。

9. I’m afraid I won’t have got the correct answer by then.（到时还没有找到正确的答案）。

10. Don’t worry. Before I get home I will have forgotten all about the matter.（就会把这件事全忘光的）。

课堂练习答案（3）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. —What do you want ______ those old boxes?
   —To put things in when I move to the new flat.
   A. by                                B. for          C. of                              D. with
   【答案】D. with do sth with sth or want sth with sth 意思是用什么东西或要什么东西做什么。

2. —____ he start at once or wait for a while?
   —Let him start at once.
   A. Will                                B. Would     C. Does                       D. Shall
   【答案】D. Shall shall表示征求对方意见。

3. I can’t tell you if it _____ tomorrow.
   A. will rain                          B. rains     C. shall rain               D. does rain
   【答案】A. will rain
4. —Did you watch the play on CCTV 1 last night? It was really good.
   —No, I didn't ______?
   —“Tea House”.
   A. What was it   B. What's on
   C. What was it about   D. How about it
【答案】B. What's on 意思是演的是什么。

5. —Can you give me the right answer?
   —Sorry, I ______. Would you repeat that question?
   A. hadn't listened   B. haven't listened
   C. don't listen   D. wasn't listening
【答案】D. wasn’t listening 刚才一瞬间，所以要用过去进行时。

6. I promised to get there before 5 o’clock, but now the rain is pouring down. They ______ for me impatiently.
   A. may wait   B. ought to wait
   C. could wait   D. must be waiting
【答案】D. must be waiting must be or must do都可以表示对目前的推测。该句应译成: 想必他们等我等的不耐烦了。

Must be    must be doing
Must have been   Must have done

7. —Haven't seen you for ages! Do you still work in Fuzhou?
   —______. It's two years since I worked there.
   A. Yes, I have   B. Yes, I do   C. No, I haven't   D. No, I don't
【答案】D. No, I don't It's two years since I worked there. 此句应译成我已经有两年没在那里工作了。

8. —Goodbye, Peter, remember me to your parents.
   —______.
   A. It's very kind of you to say so   B. Thanks, I will
   C. You are so kind   D. Thanks, what a good idea
【答案】B. Thanks, I will。在答应别人时应该用will表示坚决。

9. —You are talking too much.
   —Only at home. No one ______ me but you.
   A. is hearing   B. had heard
   C. hears   D. heard
【答案】C. hears 表示事实用一般时。
10. —We want someone to design the new art museum for us.
  —_______ the young fellow have a try?
    A. May           B. Shall       C. Will       D. Need
【答案】B. Shall
shall表示征求对方的意见。Have a try 试一试 have a look 看一看。

11. I wonder why Jenny ______ us recently. We should have heard from her by now.
    A. hasn’t written  B. doesn’t write  C. won’t write    D. hadn’t written
【答案】A. hasn’t written 因为有 recently 所以表示过去延续到现在，应用过去完成时。

12. I didn't like aunt Lucy, who ______ without warning and presenting
    A. always turned up  B. has always turned up  C. was always turned up  D. was always turning up
【答案】D. was always turning up — is always doing 表示不满。例如 My wife is always watching TV. 我的妻子总是看电视。Turn up 意思是出现。该句应译成我不喜欢我的婶子路西总不打招呼也不带礼物就突然出现。

13. —Has Tommy finished his homework yet?
  —I have no idea; he ______ it this morning.
    A. was doing  B. had been doing  C. has done    D. did
【答案】A. was doing, this morning 表示过去的一个很短的时间，所以用过去进行时。

14. The little girl ______ her heart out because she ______ her toy bear and believed she wasn’t ever going to find it.
    A. had cried; lost  B. cried; had lost  C. has cried; has lost  D. cries; has lost
【答案】B. cried; had lost cry one’s heart out 哭得很伤心。在主从句中过去完成时表示动作发生在一般过去时之前，现在完成时是指动作发生在一般现在时之前。此处强调主从句的时间差。

15. —Hey, look where you are going?
  —Oh, I’m terribly sorry _______.
    A. I’m not noticing  B. I wasn’t noticing  C. I haven’t noticed  D. I don’t notice
【答案】B. I wasn’t noticing 表示过去短暂的动作用过去进行时。

16. —Do you know your town at all?
  —No, this is the first time I ______ here.
    A. was  B. have been  C. came  D. am coming
【答案】B. have been
17. —I’m sorry to keep you waiting.
—Oh, not at all. I ______ here only a few minutes.
A. have been           B. had been       C. was             D. will be

【答案】A 过去的状态持续到现在用现在完成时。

18. — ____________my glasses?
— Yes, I saw them on your bed a minute ago.
A. Do you see         B. Had you seen
C. Would you see       D. Have you seen

【答案】D 过去的动作对现在产生的影响用现在完成时。

19. You don’t need to describe her.
I ______ her several times.
A. had met        B. have met       C. met           D. meet

【答案】B 从过去到现在的经历用现在完成时。

20. —Who is Jerry Cooper?
— _______? I saw you shaking hands with him at the meeting.
A. Don’t you meet him yet           B. Hadn’t you met him yet
C. Didn’t you meet him yet         D. Haven’t you met him yet

【答案】D 过去的动作对现在产生的影响用现在完成时。

21. Helen ______ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband _______ home.
A. has left; come         B. left; had come
C. had left; came           D. left; came

【答案】C 动作发生在过去的过去，强调时间差用过去完成时。

22. —How long ______ each other before they ______ married?
— For about a year.
A. have they known; get            B. did they know; were going to get
C. do they know; are going to get   D. had they known; got

【答案】D 动作发生在过去的过去，强调时间差用过去完成时。
将下列句子译成中文。注意动词时态的用法并说明原因。

1、我们一直在打扫教室。
   我们把教室打扫完了。

2、谁老吃我的苹果？（表示我的苹果经常被人吃了）
   谁把我的苹果吃了？

3、你吃午饭了吗？（如果没吃，就在我这儿吃吧）
   你什么时候吃的午饭？

4、我不在时，谁来过了？（说话的人发现了某种痕迹）
   我不在时，谁来过了？（随便问一下）

5、他这活儿干得怎样了？（强调结果）
   他是怎样干这活儿的？

6、我在伦敦住了八年了。
   我在伦敦住过八年。

7、你在说谎。
   你一直在说谎。

8、他毕业后就来这儿了。
   他毕业之后，来到这里。（强调时间的先后关系，有时指had finished与came之间有一段时间间隔。）

9、明天是星期五。（事实）
   明天将是星期五。（推算出来的）
   （例如：Today is Thursday and tomorrow will be Friday.）
LESSON ELEVEN -- KEY

孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

LESSON ELEVEN

被动语态

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. The picture of the house is being drawn (by her).
2. Tom will be invited to the party (by them).
3. The work should be done with great care (by workers).
4. The meeting will be postponed till next Wednesday (by them).
5. I am not allowed to eat out (by my mother).
6. My car has been repaired (by him).
7. The dinner party is going to be held (by them).
8. The text was being explained (by the teacher) when I came in.
9. These exercise books have been corrected (by the teacher).
10. The thief has been caught (by the policemen).

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. 昨天我妈妈告诉我，我爸爸被狗咬了。
   Yesterday, my mother told me that my father had been bitten by a dog.

2. 我们村子里去年盖了一所新学校。
   A new school was built in our village last year.

3. 我们教室正在被我们老师打扫着。
   Our classroom is being cleaned by our teacher.

4. 桌子上的苹果已经被狗吃完了。
   The apple on the table has been eaten by the dog.

5. 到2008年为止，北京盖了100所新学校。
   One hundred new schools had been built in Beijing by 2008.

6. 到现在为止，在北京已经有一万辆自行车被偷走了。
   Ten thousand bikes have been stolen in Beijing by now.
1. Hong Kong ______ to be a good place for eating today.
   A. knows                     B. knew                           C. is known                    D. was known

2. Last month a new law ______ in China to stop people from smoking in public places.
   A. is passed                 B. passes                         C. had passed                  D. was passed

3. A new factory is being built in Neijiang. I hope it _____ at the end of this year.
   A. will be finished       B. finishes                       C. will finish

4. --Can you sing this English song?
   --Of course, I can. It ______ many times on the radio.
   A. taught                      B. has taught                  C. is taught                      D. has been taught

5. Another two months will be needed before the new bridge______.
   A. completes                                                       B. is completed
   C. has completed                                                D. will be completed
   【注】B主将从现。

6. We will fly a kite as soon as your homework ______.
   A. finishes                                                           B. will be finished
   C. has finished                                                     D. is finished
   【注】D主将从现。

   A. builds                       B. has built                      C. will build                   D. will be built

8. --I want to teach in Tibet when I graduate from the college.
   --Me too. Teachers ______ very much there.
   A. need                         B. are needing                 C. are needed                 D. needed

   A. was built                  B. build                           C. will be built               D. is built

10. --Look, what an old palace! It looks so great!
    --Yeah, it ______ nearly 800 years ago.
    A. was building             B. was built                  C. has built                   D. is built
11. --Which sport are you in at the school sports meeting?
   --No decision yet. I think it ______ after discussing with my PE teacher, Mr. Yuan.
   A. will be decided  B. will decide  C. was decided  D. is decided

12. --It's said that an airport ______ in Yangzhou.
   --It's true. That's what we are getting excited about these days.
   A. builds  B. will build  C. is building  D. will be built

13. No conclusion ______ before we complete this test.
   A. is made  B. will be made  C. has made  D. made

14. --Susan, why are you still here? They are all ready to start.
   --I'm sorry, but I ______ when to leave.
   A. don't tell  B. didn't tell  C. wasn't told  D. not told

15. --Long time no see!
   --I've just returned. I ______ to Zhengzhou for a meeting last month.
   A. am sent  B. was sent  C. am sending  D. was sending

16. --Did you see the movie last night?
   --Yes. But when I got to the movie theater, the film ______ for ten minutes.
   A. had begun  B. had been on  C. had started  D. begun

17. The little boy ______ by a cat this morning.
   A. was made to cry  B. was made cry  C. made to cry  D. made cry

18. These trees in our school ______ ten years ago.
   A. were planted  B. are planted  C. planted  D. was planted

19. Every year lots of trees ______ to make our country more beautiful.
   A. is planted  B. was planted  C. are planted  D. were planted

20. -- What a clean and bright classroom, isn't it?
   -- Yes, it's always clean and bright because it ______ every day.
   A. cleans  B. cleaned  C. is cleaned  D. was cleaned
21. Thousands of houses ____ by the floods in Guangxi last month.
   A. destroy
   B. destroyed
   C. have destroyed
   D. were destroyed

22. The road ______ last year.
   A. builds
   B. built
   C. was built
   D. is built

23. The students ______ how to do the experiment in class yesterday.
   A. were taught
   B. better
   C. was taught
   D. teach

24. Where _____ the 2010 World EXPO ______? --In Shanghai.
   A. does, hold
   B. has, held
   C. will, hold
   D. is, held

【答案】D 表示真理或重大事件用一般时。

25. Little Mermaid （美人鱼）______ to Shanghai and visitors can see it there now.
   A. has moved
   B. has been moved
   C. will move
   D. was moved

26. Liu Xiang ______ by his coach to train regularly.
   A. advised
   B. advises
   C. was advised
   D. be advised

27. --Lots of trees and flowers _____on both sides of Huanshan Road last year.
   --Oh, that's beautiful.
   A. are planted
   B. were planting
   C. were planted
   D. have planted

28. --Mum, can I go to the zoo with Linda?
   --When your homework ______, you can go swimming.
   A. is finished
   B. was finished
   C. finishes
   D. finished

【注】A 主将从现, can 表示将来时。

29. Tomorrow there's a programme about our school on TV, then it ____ by millions of people.
   A. will see
   B. saw
   C. will be seen
   D. was seen

30. -- The 2015 Asian Sports Meet ____ this November in Guangzhou.
   --Yes. I wish Chinese players will do well.
   A. will be held
   B. have been held
   C. was to be held
   D. would be held
31. --There's too much salt in the Chinese diet.
   --So there is. The WHO says only 1.5 grams of salt _____ or each man every day.
   A. is needed                     B. needs                         C. will need                   D. has needed

32. --I hear Sam has gone to Qingdao for his holiday.
   --Oh, how nice! Do you know when he______?
   A. left                              B. was leaving                C. has left                     D. had left

33. It_____ to drive after drinking wine.
   A. is allowed                                                           B. is not allowed
   C is made                                                                D is welcome

34. We have ______ up early in order to catch the early bus.
   A. used to get                                                         B. been used to get
   C. used for getting                                                  D. been used to getting
   【注】to be used to doing … 表示习惯做某事, used to do 的意思过去常常做…。have been used是to be used to doing的完成时态。

35. -- It's difficult for the village children to cross the river for school.
   -- I think a bridge _______ over the river.
   A. should be built                                                   B. is being built
   C. has been built                                                     D. was built

36. The World Expo (世博会) _______ in Shanghai now.
   A. being had                    B. is having                    C. is holding                 D. is being held

37. My e-mail ____to you last night. Have you received it _____?
   A. sent; yet                      B. is sent; already           C. was sent; yet

38. I _______ to take part in the English speech contest last week.
   A. ask                              B. asked                          C. am asked                  D. was asked

39. --_______ the Internet _____ in your school?
   --Yes, but the computer in our office has broken down.
   A. Is, used                     B. Is, using                  C. Does, use                  D. Has, used

40. --Excuse me, what's this for?
   --It's a cleaner and it       to pick up dirt.
   A. uses                             B. is used                       C. is using                    D. used
1. —Hey, look where you are going?
   —Oh, I’m terribly sorry____.
   A. I’m not noticing  B. I wasn’t noticing
   C. I haven’t noticed  D. I don’t notice

   【答案】B对过去动作的强调，进行时语气较强。

2. There was a lot of fun at yesterday’s party. You____come, but why didn’t you?
   A. must have       B. should
   C. need have       D. ought to have

   【答案】D ought to have done, should have done, 都表示本该做，而没有做的事情，ought 强调客观，而 should 强调主观，很像 have to 与 must 的区别。

3. —We could have walked to the station, it was so near.
   —Yes, A taxi____at all necessary.
   A. wasn’t       B. hadn’t been
   C. wouldn’t        D. won’t be

   【答案】A  could have done 是虚拟语气，表示对过去事情的假设，意思是本来能够做某事而没有做。

   He could have passed the exam, but he was too careless. 本来他能够通过考试，但是他太粗心。

4. —Do you know our town at all?
   — No, this is the first time I____here.
   A. was       B. have been
   C. came   D. am coming

   【答案】B 该句应译成“这是我第一次来这里”，句子中含有从过去一直到现在仅有的一次经历，例如：

   How many times have you been there?
   句中含有过去至今你有几次去那的经历，这样的句子都应该用完成时态。

5. Tom____into the house when no one____.
   A. slipped; was looking  B. had slipped; looked
   C. slipped; had looked  D. was slipping; looked

   【答案】A when引导的从句是进行时，对主句的动作有一种不满的情绪，这句话应该译成：当没有人注意的时候，他却偷偷地溜进来了。例如：Someone knocked at the door when I was having breakfast (taking a bath). 此句应译成，我正在吃早饭(洗
6. My dictionary_____. I have looked for it everywhere but still _______ it.
   A. has lost; don’t find  B. is missing; don’t find
   C. has lost; haven’t found  D. is missing; haven’t found
   【答案】D 注意missing在这里是形容词，是丢了的意思，这不是进行时态。我们在讲解分词的时候，将详细讲解。

7. In some parts of the world, tea _____ with milk and sugar.
   A. is serving  B. is served
   C. serves  D. served
   【答案】B 被动语态。

8. ---I’m sorry to keep you waiting.
    ---Oh, not at all. I_____ here only a few minutes.
   A. have been  B. had been
   C. was  D. will be
   【答案】A 强调对现在产生的影响。

9. I need one more stamp before my collection_____.
   A. has completed  B. completes
   C. has been completed  D. is completed
   【答案】D 用现在时的被动语态，主句从句都是将来时，从句一般，主句表示将来，need这个词，本身就表示将来。

10. ---the sports meeting might be put off.
    ---Yes, it all depends on the weather.
   A. I’ve been told  B. I’ve told
   C. I’m told  D. I told
   【答案】A 表示主从句时间差。

11. As she_____ the newspaper, Granny _____ asleep.
    A. read; was falling  B. was reading; fell
    C. was reading; was falling  D. read; fell
    【答案】B 当连词是as，并且引导的从句是进行时时，表示一怎么样，就怎么样，意思接近于as soon as。

- as--1. 连接词，一边...一边，随着

(1) She was doing her homework as she was listening to the music.

(2) As she grew older, she became more beautiful.

- as--2. 当...时 指一个动作紧接着一个动作发生，从句通常用进行时。 (不能用
when（因为两个动作不是同时发生）

(1) **As I was going** out, it began to rain.
    我刚要出去，天就下雨了。

(2) I saw Mary **as she was getting** on the bus.
    玛丽刚要上车，我就看到她。

(3) **As he was eating his breakfast**, he heard someone knock at the door.
    他刚吃早饭，听见有人敲门。

12. Shirley ____ a book about China last year but I don’t know whether she has finished it.
   A. has written  
   B. wrote
   C. had written  
   D. was writing

   【答案】D 该句用wrote和was writing都可以，而was writing强调当时在写书。

13. You don’t need to describe her. I ____ her several times.
   A. had met  
   B. have met
   C. met
   D. meet

   【答案】B 表示对现在产生的影响。

14. — Who is Jerry Cooper?
    — ____? I saw you shaking hands with him at the meeting.
   A. Don’t you meet him yet
   B. Hadn’t you met him yet
   C. Didn’t you meet him yet
   D. Haven’t you met him yet

   【答案】D 表示对现在产生影响。

15. Helen ____ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband ____ home.
   A. has left; comes
   B. left; had come
   C. had left; came
   D. left; came

   【答案】C 表示对过去产生的影响。

16. — I haven’t heard from Henry for a long time.
    — What do you suppose ____ to him?
   A. was happening
   B. to happen
   C. has happened
   D. had happened

   【答案】C 表示时间差。

17. — How long ____ each other before they ____ married?
   — For about a year.
   A. have they known; get
   B. did they know; were going to get
   C. do they know; are going to get
   D. had they known; got
18. The pen I ______ I ______ is on my desk, right under my nose.
A. think; lost
B. thought; had lost
C. think; had lost
D. thought; have lost

【答案】B

pen后跟的是定语从句，如没有I thought, lost用过去时就行，但由于我想指的
是过去想，丢失这个动作是发生在过去的过去，所以用完成时。此处用的是完成时的第三种用法，表示从句的时间差。

had lost                                    I thought                 the pen is on my desk

19. — Oh, it’s you! I ______ you.
   — I’ve just had my hair cut and I’m wearing new glasses.
A. didn’t recognize                                      B. hadn’t recognized
C. haven’t recognized                                 D. don’t recognize

【答案】A

表示过去没有认出，用过去时。

20. — Nancy is not coming tonight.
   — But she ______!
A. promises                                                 B. promised
C. will promise                                           D. had promised

【答案】B

21. — Hi, Tracy, you look tired.
   — I am tired. I ______ the living room all day.
A. painted                                                   B. had painted
C. have been painting                                 D. have painted

【答案】C

all day表示一个持续的时间，应用完成进行时，因为完成进行时比完成时语气强得多，从上下文看得出，他说他累了，整整刷了一天的房子，语气很强。

22. The price ______, but I doubt whether it will remain so.
A. went down                                              B. will go down
C. has gone down                                        D. was going down

【答案】C

表示持续。

23. — You’re drinking too much.
—Only at home. No one ___ me but you.
A. is seeing  
B. had seen  
C. sees  
D. saw
【答案】C see这个词没有进行时,应用一般时,进行时表示将来。

24. I’ve won a holiday for two to Florida. I ___ my mum.
A. am taking  
B. have taken  
C. take  
D. will have taken
【答案】A am taking表示将来时,意思是说,我要带我母亲去。

25. All the preparations for the task ___, and we’re ready to start.
A. completed  
B. complete  
C. had been completed  
D. have been completed
【答案】D 表示对现在产生的影响,应用现在完成时的被动态。

26. —____ my glasses?
—Yes, I saw them on your bed a minute ago.
A. Do you see  
B. Had you seen  
C. Would you see  
D. Have you seen
【答案】D 表示对现在产生的影响。

27. —You’ve left the light on.
—Oh, so I have. and turn it off.
A. I’ll go  
B. I’ve gone  
C. I go  
D. I’m going
【答案】A 正像我们课文里所讲, to be going to表示打算, will do表示要干什么,语气比 going to肯定程度大,此句表示接受对方的意见,所以用will go要好得多。

28. My uncle ___ until he was forty-five.
A. married  
B. was not married  
C. was not marrying  
D. would marry
【答案】B 此句用过去时或者过去完成时都对,这里只有B是过去时,应选B。

29. Hundreds of jobs ___ if the factory closes.
A. lose  
B. will be lost  
C. are lost  
D. will lose

30. A new cinema ___ here. They hope to finish it next month.
A. will be built  
B. is built  
C. has been built  
D. is being built
【答案】D 从下文看，可以判断该工程正在进行中。
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. raised</th>
<th>2. have been living</th>
<th>3. work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. am going</td>
<td>5. is</td>
<td>6. went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. was</td>
<td>8. was</td>
<td>9. got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. arrived</td>
<td>11. was</td>
<td>12. left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. had changed</td>
<td>14. didn’t recognize</td>
<td>15. was gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. used</td>
<td>17. had been torn down</td>
<td>18. was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. began</td>
<td>20. greeted</td>
<td>21. arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. prepared</td>
<td>23. asked</td>
<td>24. felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. began</td>
<td>26. was</td>
<td>27. noticed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. glanced</td>
<td>29. was speaking</td>
<td>30. became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. became</td>
<td>32. confused</td>
<td>33. were behaving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. decided</td>
<td>35. asked</td>
<td>36. have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. forgotten</td>
<td>38. asked</td>
<td>39. meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. said</td>
<td>41. have forgotten</td>
<td>42. talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. should remain</td>
<td>44. speak</td>
<td>45. are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. speak</td>
<td>47. is</td>
<td>48. keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. realized</td>
<td>50. had happened</td>
<td>51. are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. feel</td>
<td>53. don’t take</td>
<td>54. guessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. had gradually adopted</td>
<td>56. tried</td>
<td>57. didn’t work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. remained</td>
<td>59. could no longer accept</td>
<td>60. became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61. made</td>
<td>62. was</td>
<td>63. cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64. came</td>
<td>65. didn’t lessen</td>
<td>66. feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67. feel</td>
<td>68. don’t feel</td>
<td>69. haven’t accepted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71. don’t try</td>
<td>72. make</td>
<td>73. talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74. are going</td>
<td>75. include</td>
<td>76. mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77. have felt</td>
<td>78. wasn’t being accepted</td>
<td>79. had felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80. was</td>
<td>81. was</td>
<td>82. consider 83. feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84. am caught</td>
<td>85. belong</td>
<td>86. has not yet accepted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KEY -- LESSON FOURTEEN

LESSON FOURTEEN

名词性从句 (1)

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. Do you believe that the thief from England stole a lot of bikes in Beijing last year?

2. Yesterday, the doctor told me that our teacher was going to die.

3. Do you know why the beautiful girl of your class stole your teacher’s wallet yesterday?

4. Yesterday, he told me how much money he would (was going to) make.

5. I do not believe that your monitor will come tomorrow.

6. Yesterday, he told me what he had bought in Wang Fu Jing Street.

   Yesterday, he told me what he bought in Wang Fu Jing Street

7. Do you know whose sister bit me yesterday?

   Do you know whose sister has bit me?

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

There are three possibilities about your missing money. First, maybe you forget (that) you spent the money on something else yesterday afternoon. The next, it’s also possible that your money was stolen while you were shopping. And the last possibility is that you lost it on your way home. I think (that) 50 Yuan is not too much. Don’t worry about it.
一、汉译英

1. 我忘记我在什么地方见过他。
   用连词where并将其置于从句句首
   
   I forget where I met him.

2. 你想要的东西就是我想要的东西。
   用连词what
   
   What you want is what I want.

3. 明天我们是否飞上海取决于天气。
   用连词if（英语的主语从句用形式主语it，从句应放句尾）
   
   It depends on the weather if we can fly to Shanghai tomorrow.

二、课堂练习答案（2）

1. 我要的东西就是一辆汽车。
   It is a car what I want.

2. 谁告诉你我买了一辆宝马车？
   Who told you that I had bought a BMW?

3. 谁将是我们英语老师，不清楚。
   It is not clear who will be our English teacher.
4. A house is what my father is going to buy next year.

5. The problem is where we can get so much money.

6. Do you know whose sister the teacher from America wants to marry?

7. It is not important who will be our teacher.

8. My idea is that we’d better go to see a film.

9. I’m not sure whether he has a copy.

10. It is very clear why the mouse loves the rice.

孙老师提示:
请同学务必要自己做一下上面的句子，然后再听老师的讲解。基本句型掌握得好不好将直接影响到今后的学习及考试的成绩。

1. We were not surprised at ______, for he had worked so hard.
   A. what has he achieved
   B. that what he had achieved
   C. what he had achieved
   D. that he had achieved

【答案】C。at是介词，其后接宾语从句时，从句要用陈述句的语序。achieve是及物动词，what在从句中作宾语，所以选C。that在从句中只起连接作用，无意义。

2. _______ I saw was two men crossing the street.
3. Mary found it difficult to talk calmly about _______ she had experienced at the station.
   A. which        B. what        C. why        D. where
   【答案】B。what在从句中作experienced的宾语。

4. _______ was not the way the event happened.
   A. Which the press reported                  B. That the press reported
   C. What did the press report                 D. What the press reported
   【答案】D。此处需填入一个主语从句。在这个主语从句中，做动词reported的宾语应该用连接代词what。

5. No one doubts _______ it is true.
   A. whether        B. if            C. that        D. what
   【答案】C。doubt用在肯定句中后接if引导的从句；用在否定句中后接that引导的从句。

6. The old gentleman never fails to help _______ is in need of his help.
   A. whom          B. who           C. whoever       D. whomever
   【答案】C。本句中需要填入一个连接代词引导宾语从句。且此代词要在从句中作主语。A、D都只能作宾语。whoever引导宾语从句。who也可以引导宾语从句，但whoever强调无论谁。

7. _______ was unimportant.
   A. Whether he enjoyed our dinner or not
   B. No matter how he enjoyed our dinner
   C. If he enjoyed our dinner
   D. What he enjoyed our dinner
   【答案】A。本句中包含一个主语从句，意思是“他是否喜欢我们的饭不重要。”只有A最符合题意。B、C中的no matter how 和if 都引导状语从句；D项中的what在从句中做主语或宾语，而本从句中有主语和宾语。

8. How long do you think _______ to finish this urgent task?
   A. did it take you                                      B. it will take you
   C. will it take you                                    D. it to take you
   【答案】B。think后接宾语从句。从句不倒装。
1. The problem is how we can get so much money.

2. It is most important problem of the revolution who are our friends and who are our enemies.

3. It is a car what he wants.

4. It is not clear whether he will refuse me or not.

5. It is no problem that he will pass the examination tomorrow.

6. I don’t know whose sister the teacher from England likes.

7. It is not clear whose dog bit you yesterday.

8. It is unknown whether he will take part in the ball or not.

9. The house is what he needs.

10. I’m glad to know that he made one million dollars last year.

11. I’m sorry to hear that you lost one million dollars.

12. Do you know why your monitor is going to kill me?
13. 你相信你们班的那个漂亮的女孩昨天尿炕了？

Do you believe that the beautiful girl of your class wetted the bed yesterday?

课堂练习答案（6）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. what  2. when  3. what  4. where
5. how much  6. whether  7. how  8. what (which)
9. that (how)  10. whose  11. why  12. why
13. whether  14. because  15. because  16. why

课堂练习答案（7）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. Whether he knew the news
2. which teacher will teach us mathematics next term
3. where and when I met him
4. what he says, what he does
5. whether we’ll do the work at all (or not)
6. what we need
7. Whether he will refuse the invitation
8. Whether we shall have the match
9. How they managed to do so much
10. When we will have the meeting
11. What he had said
12. that he has passed the math exam
13. That he had recovered so soon
14. that Tom is the best student in our class
15. that you’d better go to the lecture with me
16. how we can do it well without any help
17. what he had done
18. what we did together during our holiday
19. whether I have a copy
20. what had happened
LESSON SIXTEEN

定语从句 (1)

课堂练习答案 (1)
(详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com)

1. 你昨天见到的那个女孩是我们老师的女朋友。
The girl who you met yesterday is our teacher’s girlfriend.

2. 你们照顾的那个老太太去年死了。
The old lady who you had looked after died last year.

3. 你昨天捡到的那个钱包是我们老师的。
The wallet that you picked up yesterday is our teacher’s.

4. 他们正在建的那座大楼是我们的新图书馆。
The building which is being built is our new library.
The building which they are building is our new library.

5. 你想娶的那个女孩是个贼。
The girl that you want to marry is a thief.

6. 在厕所前面吃包子的女孩是谁？
Who is the girl that is eating BaoZi in front of the WC?

7. 我昨天丢的那个钱包就在我们班长的包里。
The wallet which I lost yesterday is in the bag of our monitor.

8. 我刚买的那辆宝马被人偷了。
The BMW which I had bought was stolen.

9. 一个知道怎样做的人将会找到一份工作，一个知道为什么这样做的人将是老板。
A person who knows “how” will find a job and a person who knows “why” will be a boss.

● Do you know the boy who is running after the dog that is running after the cat that is running after the rat that is eating the cake that was made by my mother who my father married yesterday?

课堂练习答案 (2)
(详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com)

1. Can you find the house in which (where) you were born?
2. I do not like the car that (which) you bought.
3. Would you give (pass) me the dictionary whose cover is red?
4. He is the tallest boy that speaks English well.
5. You are the girl who I have looked (have been looking) for.
LESSON SEVENTEEN -- KEY
孙老师课堂·三句通简单英语

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、她就是那个到明年年底，会攒一万美元的那个女孩。
   She is the girl who will have made ten thousand dollars by the end of next year.

2、你认识那个警察一直在找的小偷吗？
   Do you know the thief whom (who) the policeman has been looking for?

3、昨天他告诉我，是谁吃了我的苹果，那个苹果是我妈妈给我买的。
   Yesterday, he told me who had eaten my apple which my mother bought for me.

4、自从她出生以来她就从未见过她爸爸。
   She has never seen her father since she was born.

5、她昨天告诉我，自从去年她见到她父亲，就再也没有见过了。
   Yesterday, she told me that she had never seen her father since she was born.

6、你知道你们班长喜欢的那个女孩是贼吗？
   Do you know the girl whom (whom) your monitor likes is a thief?

7、这个公寓在王府井大街的一个大楼里，它离学校不远。
   The flat is in the build in Wang Fu Jing street, which is not far from the school.

8、我在英国学习五年之后，于1995年回国，当时我想在贵公司工作。
   I wanted to work in your company in 1995, when I came back from England, where I had studied for 5 years.

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

### LESSON EIGHTEEN

**状语从句**

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. **No sooner had they got** off the train_____it started moving.
   A. When  B. than  C. then  D. after
   **【答案】**答案选B。表示"一……就……"

2. It is very important for the strong man to know that_____strong he is, he cannot be the strongest.
   A. whatever  B. whenever  C. whichever  D. however
   **【答案】**答案选D。however引导让步状语从句，修饰strong。that引导宾语从句的句意是：无论他多么强壮，他都不是最强壮的。

3. _____I admit that there are problems, I don’t agree that they cannot be solved.
   A. When  B. As  C. While  D. Since
   **【答案】**答案选C。while表示虽然。句意是：虽然我承认有些问题，但我不同意说就解决不了这些问题。
4. We’ll be only too glad to attend your party _____ we can get a baby-sitter.
   A. so far as     B. provided that   C. unless     D. except that
   【答案】答案选 B. provided that=if。句意：我们要是能找到人看孩子就会非常高兴地参加你们的聚会。注意句中 only too 表示“非常”。

5. _____ she finds out that you’ve lost her books.
   A. As if   B. Even if   C. What if   D. Suppose that
   【答案】答案选 C. What if=what will happen if。

6. He talks as if he _____ everything in the world.
   A. knows     B. knew     C. had known     D. would have known
   【答案】答案选 B。as if 引导的状语从句中表示一种不真实的情况时，要使用虚拟语气。其构成是：表示对现在发生事情的假设用一般过去时态；表示对过去发生事情的假设用过去完成时态。

7. _____ you disagree with her, her idea is still worth considering. (1998年)
   A. Even if     B. If only     C. Instead of     D. Despite of
   【答案】答案选 A。even if 表示“即使”; if only: 要不是; instead of: 代替，后接短语; despite of: 尽管，后接短语。

8. In short, _____ he lives, a man belongs to some society. (1997年)
   A. whatever     B. whenever     C. whichever     D. wherever
   【答案】答案选 D。wherever=no matter where 本题意是：简而言之，无论一个人住在哪里，他都是属于某个社会的。

9. She has wanted to become a nurse _____ since she was a young girl. (1997年)
   A. long     B. often     C. always     D. ever
   【答案】答案选 D。ever since 相当于 since, 表示自从。

10. Rubber differs from plastics _____ it is produced naturally and not in the lab. (2005年)
    A. at that     B. in that     C. for that     D. with that
    【答案】答案选 B。in that 表示 “因为”，引导原因状语从句。

   课堂练习答案（2）
   （详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

1. when 当主句是进行时，when 有突然意外的意思。
2. As 随着
3. as 一边……一边……
4. when 正在……的时候，突然……。 通常主句是进行时或 to be about to 时，在翻译的时
候，when可以译成没想到或突然。

5. When 此句是谚语when等于if
6. While 表示一个时间段
7. when 表示一个时间点
8. While 表示一个时间段，这是句谚语，意思是不要过分相信别人或依赖别人。
9. As 指从句动作紧跟着主句动作发生，该句是谚语，乘风扬帆，趁热打铁。
10. as 一边……一边……

课堂练习答案（3）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. So far as I know.
2. if I’m free.
3. no matter how high it is.
4. as soon as he got well.
5. unless it rains.
6. when she was young.
7. whenever you like.
8. before you leave the company.
9. that the interpreter couldn’t follow him.
10. unless we call taxi.
11. No sooner had I sat down.
12. unless you practice every day.
13. so that we might discuss the matter thoroughly.
14. in case there was any accident.
15. Even if you offer your help.
16. As long as I am alive.
17. in order that he might arrive in time.
18. since we moved to the new address.
19. Wherever you are.
20. whenever I talk with him.
LESSON NINETEEN -- KEY

高考原卷单选分析

课堂练习答案
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

普通高等学校招生全国统一考试

21. John **promised** his doctor he **would** not smoke. 题号？
   A. might                    B. should                   C. could                     D. would
   【答案】考查情态动词。
   句子的意思为，约翰向医生许诺他不会抽烟。表示意愿或决心时，现在时用will
   过去时用would，详细讲解请听第三课。
   Might表示可能性，should表示应该，could表示能力或委婉的语气。

22. —**Have** you **read** the book called Waiting for Anya?
   —Who **wrote** it?
   A. writes                    B. has written            C. wrote                     D. had written
   【答案】考查时态，仔细听第3课，四种时态，谈过去的事用过去时。
   句子的意思为，“你读过《守候安雅》这本书吗？”“谁写的啊？”写书是发生在
   过去的事情，所以用一般过去时。

23. —Did you return Fred’s call?
   —I didn’t need to **because** I’ll see him tomorrow.
   A. though                  B. unless                   C. when                      D. because
   【答案】连词听第18课状语从句。
   明天就能见到Fred是没有必要给他回电话的原因，因此选D. because。
   Though虽然，表示让步；unless除非，表示条件；when当……时，表示时间，均
   不符合题意。

24. ______ that she was going off to sleep, I asked if she’d like that little doll on her bed.
   A. Seeing                  B. To see                   C. See                         D. Seen
   【答案】考查非谓语。注意非谓语动词是句子主谓的发出者还是接收者。句子的意思
   为，看到她去睡觉了，我问她是否想让那个小娃娃在她床上。
   不定式To see表目的或将来，See是谓语形式，Seen表示被动，完成。

25. It was **hard** for him to learn English in a family, in which **neither** of the parents spoke the
   language.
   A. none                    B. neither                   C. both                       D. each
   【答案】考查不定代词（neither）。
   句子的意思为，对他来说在父母双方都不说英语的家庭中学英语是很困难的，说
明他的父母都不会说英语，neither表示两者都不，none表示三者以上都不，both表示两者都，each表示每一个个体。

26. After the long journey, the three of them went back home, ______.
A. hungry and tiredly  B. hungry and tired
C. hungrily and tiredly  D. hungrily and tired

【答案】B
考查形容词作伴随状语，要用逗号分割。形容词作状语，可以表示原因、时间、伴随或方式等。此处必须填形容词而不是副词，是因为形容词是修饰名词的，此处修饰的是the three of them，他们三个又饿又累；副词是修饰动词的，此处的动词是went back home，我们不能说回家的动作是又饿又累的，因此不能选择副词。句子的意思为，经过长途旅行后，他们回到家里，又饿又累。

He slept for a night, cold and hungry.
他又冷又饿，在露天睡了一晚上。

27. The hotel wasn’t particularly good. But I ____ in many worse hotels.
A. was staying  B. stayed  C. would stay  D. had stayed

【答案】D
考查时态，听第8课。
句子的意思为，这家旅馆不是特别好，但我住过更差的。前半句话的时态为过去时，stay in many worse hotels发生在过去的过去，应用过去完成时。

28. I’ll give you a friend’s home address ______ I can be reached most evenings.
A. which  B. when  C. whom  D. where

【答案】D
考查定语从句，认真听第16课，定语从句(2)。
定语从句I can be reached most evening是完整的，说明应该填关系副词。

29. No decision _____ about any future appointment until all the candidates have been interviewed.
A. will be made  B. is made  C. is being made  D. has been made

【答案】A
考查时态（主将从现）。不可机械的认为将来时只有will，现在时只有do，现在完成时也是现在时。认真听第2、4、9、10课，内有详细讲解。
例：The boy will get a lot of money when his father dies.
他父亲死后，他能得到很多钱。
The boy will get a lot of money when his father has died.
只有在他父亲死了以后他才能得到很多钱。

30. The companies are working together to create _____ they hope will be the best means of transport in the 21st century.
A. which  B. that  C. what  D. who

【答案】C
考查名词性从句，听第14课名词性从句。
create后为宾语从句，该句少主语，其中they hope为插入语。在名词性从句中能够起引导作用并且能作从句主语的引导词有what和who，此处指物，因此选C. what。
1. 你妈妈所希望的就是你能成为你们班最好的学生。
   What your mother hopes is that you will be the best student in your class.

2. 我喜欢的人就是那个女孩。
   Who I like is the girl.

3. 我喜欢的人就是站在那的那个女孩。
   Who I like is the girl that is standing there.

31. –Did the book give the information you needed?  
   –Yes. But _____ it, I had to read the entire book.
   A. to find                   B. find                       C. to finding              D. finding  
   【答案】不定式做状语表示目的。 
     意思为，为了找到信息，我必须读完整本书。

32. I feel greatly honored ____ into their society.
   A. to welcome                                             B. welcoming  
   C. to be welcomed                                      D. welcomed  
   【答案】考查非谓语，主系表+不定式 (固定结构)。
     I'm glad to see you. 主语是动作的发出者用主动。
     I feel greatly honored to be welcomed into their society... 因主语是动作的接受者用不定式的被动形式，句子的意思为，能受到他们社团的欢迎，我感到非常荣幸。

33. If you really have to leave during the meeting, you’d better leave ____ the back door.
   A. for                         B. by                         C. across                    D. out  
   【答案】考查介词。
     句子的意思为，如果你真想在会议期间离开，你最好从后门走。by 表示经由，通过，for “为，给”；across “穿过”；out “出去，离开”。

34. I’m sorry you’ve been waiting so long, but it’ll still be some time ____ Brian get back.
   A. before                   B. since                     C. till                         D. after  
   【答案】考查状语从句连接词 (before)。
     句子的意思为，很抱歉让你等了那么久，但是他来之前你还得再等等。before 在此表示 “在……之前”。
     since 表示 “自从”；till 表示 “直到……才……”；after 表示 “在……之后”。

35. It is worth considering what makes “convenience” foods so popular, and ____ better ones of your own.
   A. introduces             B. to introduce         C. introducing            D. introduced  
   【答案】考查非谓语。
     句子的意思为，考虑什么使得速食食品流行起来以及介绍一个你觉得更好的方法是很值得的。并列连词 and 连接的两部分分别是 considering 和 introducing，因此要保持前后形式一致，选 introduce 的动名词形式。
     注: Worth 为分词后跟动名词。
LESSON TWENTY

动词不定式（1）

课堂练习答案（1）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1. for 2. of 3. of 4. For
5. for (句子意思是对你有好处所以用for)
6. of (此句意思是你这人很好所以用of)
7. of

课堂练习答案（2）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1、从北京飞往上海要花两个小时。
   It takes 2 hours to fly from Beijing to Shanghai.

2、横穿美国坐火车要花40个小时。
   It takes 40 hours to cross America by train.

3、每天做家庭作业要花学生4个小时。
   学生错句 It takes of a student 4 hours to do homework.
   正确句子 It takes a student 4 hours to do homework every day.

4、对我爸爸来说每月挣一万块钱非常容易。
   学生错句 It easy for my father to make ten thousand Yuan every month.
   正确句子 It's easy for my father to make ten thousand Yuan every month.

5、对一个学生来说每天做家庭作业非常必要。
   It's necessary for a student to do homework every day.

6、你帮助我真是太好了。
   It's kind of you to help me.

课堂练习答案（3）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1、我们的职责(duty)就是努力学习。
   Our duty is to study hard.

2、我的愿望是找份好工作。
   My wish is to find a good job.
3. 我要建议的是将会议推迟 (put off)。
   What I would suggest is to put off the meeting.

4. 帮助别人就是帮助自己。
   To help others is to help ourselves.

课堂练习答案（4）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 我希望能再度访问此地。
   I hope to visit this place again.

2. 她非常喜欢读书。
   She enjoys reading very much.

3. 司机没能及时看见另一辆车。
   The driver failed to see the other car in time.

4. 汤姆拒绝借我他的车。
   Tom refused to lend me his car.

5. 我希望天黑前到那。
   We hope to get there before dark.

6. 这个女孩决定自己做决定。
   The girl decided to make a decision herself.

课堂练习答案（5）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. 怎样搞到这么多钱还是个问题。
   How to get so much money is still a question.

2. 我知道到哪里能找到这个男孩。
   I know where to find the boy.

3. 问题是怎样学好英语。
   The question is how to learn English well.

4. 你最好弄清楚要把它放在哪里。
You’d better find out where to put it.

5、我发现学好英语很有用。
   I find it useful to learn English.

课堂练习答案（6）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、我发现学好英语很有用。
   I find it useful to learn English well.

2、我们认为不告诉她她是错误的。
   We thought it wrong not to tell her.

课堂练习答案（7）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1、父亲不让我们在街上玩耍。
   Father will not allow us to play on the street.

2、我们相信他是有罪的。
   We believe him to be guilty.

3、我们认为汤姆是班上最好的学生之一。
   We consider Tom to be one of the best students in our class.

4、他请我谈谈英语学习。
   He asked me to talk about English study.

5、老师让他像这样说这个单词。
   The teacher made him say the word like this.

6、你能帮我搬这个重箱子吗。
   Could you help me (to) carry the heavy box?

注：作动词help的宾语补足语时，动词不定式符号to可以带，也可以不带。

7、我要让你看看如何做这件事。
   I’ll show you how to do it.
LESSON TWENTY ONE -- KEY

1、我妈妈告诉我，当我小时候，我们没有房子住。
My mother told me that we had no room to live in when I was a little boy.

2、每天做家庭作业，要花我90分钟时间。
It takes me 90 minutes to do homework every day.

3、我发现学开车很容易。
I found it easy to learn to drive.

4、开车从我们家到学校，要花两个小时。
It takes me two hours to drive from my home to the school.

5、当我是个孩子的时候，我有机会上学。
When I was a little boy I had no chance to go to school.

6、昨天我看见他偷你钱包了。
Yesterday, I saw him steal your wallet.

7、你认识要教我们数学的那个老师吗？
Do you know the teacher who will teach us mathematics?
Do you know the teacher to teach us mathematics?

8、你还有很长的路要走。
You have a long way to go.

动词不定式 (2)

课堂练习答案 (1)
（详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

动词不定式 (2)

课堂练习答案 (2)
（详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

1. take  2. enter  3. to run  4. to be  
5. go  6. to work  7. to adopt  8. to go  
9. (to) clean  10. to know

课堂练习答案 (3)
（详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

1、学习英语对学生来说非常重要。
It is important for students to study English.
2. 对一个中国人来说在美国挣钱非常困难。
   It is very difficult for a Chinese to earn money in America.

3. 你帮助你们班长真傻。
   It is very foolish of you to help your monitor.

4. 对一个十岁的小孩来讲，在那条河里救起那个女孩真勇敢。
   It is very brave of a 10 years old child to save the girl in the river.

5. 学习数学对我们来说非常必要。
   It is very necessary for us to learn math.

6. 对于孙老师来说每月挣一百万美元是不可能的。
   It is impossible for Teacher Sun to make one million dollars every month.

LESSON TWENTY TWO
动词不定式（3）

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登录 www.teachersun.com）

1. 对于一个司机来说了解汽车非常必要。
   It's necessary for a driver to understand cars.

2. 我很高兴来机场接你。
   I'm very glad to come to the airport to meet you.

3. 为了给我买一辆新自行车，我爸爸拼命挣钱。
   To buy a new bike to me, my father does his best to make money.

4. 我想去看看我妈妈。
   I want to see my mother.

5. 你看见过他昨天在教室里做作业了没？
   Did you see him do his homework in the classroom yesterday?

6. 学英语花了我两年的时间。
   It took me two years to study English.

7. 你知道怎样学英语吗？
   Do you know how to study English?
LESSON TWENTY THREE -- KEY

Lesson Twenty Three -- Key

孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语

www.teachersun.com

LESSON TWENTY THREE

动词不定式（4）

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1、孙老师把课堂上不许说话定成一个规矩。
   Teacher Sun made it a rule not to allow speaking in class.

2、我真希望我学过英语。
   I really wish to have studied.

3、我很高兴我能够一直和你一起生活。
   I'm glad to have been living with you.

4、这台电视需要修理了。
   My TV needs to be repaired.

5、据说你父亲现在住在美国。
   Your father is said to be living in America.

6、他去美国，目的就是为了挣更多的钱。
   He went to America to make more money.

7、他把那条咬过你的狗杀了。
   He killed the dog that had bit you.

8、你见到那条狗了吗？就是那条要吃我们家猫的狗。
   Have you seen the dog to eat my cat (that wanted to eat my cat)?

9、我走进他的卧室，结果发现他睡着了。
   I walked to his bedroom only to find that he was sleeping.

10、你知道克服这个困难的方法吗？
    Do you know the way to solve the problem?

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1、我很高兴你知道学习英语对你来说很重要。
   I'm glad that you know (that) it is important for you [to study] English.

2、你是否知道你们班长想要在下个学期去美国学英语？
   Do you know if your monitor wants to go to America to study English next term?

3、昨天我看到你们班长偷你的钱包了。
   Yesterday, I saw your monitor steal your wallet.

4、昨天夜里12点我听到你们班的漂亮女孩在二楼厕所里唱歌。
   I heard the beautiful girl of your class [sing a song in W.C on the second floor at 12 last night].
5、你知道你们班长每天花多少时间学习英语吗？
Do you know how much time your monitor spends studying English everyday?
Do you know how much time it takes for your monitor to study English everyday?

6、你知道你们班老师喜欢旅游吗？
Do you know that your teacher likes traveling?
Do you know that your teacher likes to travel?

7、我妈妈不允许我在外面吃饭。
My mother doesn’t allow me to eat out.

8、谁教给你偷钱包的?
Who taught you to steal wallets?

9、当我六岁的时候，我就开始学习做饭。
I started to learn to cook at the age of six.

10、昨天他问我，我是否爱看卡通片。
Yesterday, he asked me if I like to watch cartoon.

11、我努力挣钱，目的就是为了娶那个女孩。
I make money hard to marry the girl.

12、你们班那个男孩告诉我，他爸爸每天给他一百块钱是不可能的。
The boy of your class told me that it was impossible for his father to give him 100 Yuan everyday.

课堂练习答案（3）
(详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com)

1. to be reckoned with in (不定式做定语时，通常表示其动作发生在谓语动词之后或同时发生。)
2. to go
3. to be shown
4. to live in
5. to be shown
6. to be posted
7. for you to put all your books on (注：定语从句中的you应变成不定式的逻辑主语，因bookshelf在不定式中做介词on的宾语，所以应在句尾加on。)
8. to be displayed
9. to make
10. to be operated on
11. to have been able to help (因不定式动作发生在谓语动词之前，所以要用不定式完成时to have been able to… …)
12. too angry to speak
13. only to find (用不定式表示结果，可以在不定式前＋only)
14. whom to return the pen to (从句中的whom在不定式中做宾语，所以要在改成不定式时可在不定式前用whom)
15. to do
16. to invite
17. who to be

课堂练习答案（4）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

汉译英
1、说话和气伤不到舌头。
   To speak kindly doesn’t hurt the tongue.

2、节约时间就是延长生命。
   To save time is to lengthen life.

3、你的儿子已经到了上学的年纪了。
   Your son is old enough to go to school.

4、洪水足以毁坏这座建筑。
   The flood is big enough to damage the building.

5、为了省钱他住在只有一个卧室的公寓里。
   He lives in one bedroom flat so as to save money.

6、他的工作就是保持二层的所有教室清洁。
   His work is to keep all the classrooms on the second flood clean.

7、他很幸运考试通过了。
   He was lucky to pass the examination.

8、下一个到港的航班是从纽约来的。
   The next flight to arrive is from New York.

9、他要在美国学习的愿望是可以理解的。
   His wish to study in America is quite understandable.

10、我看他太懒了。
    I consider him to be too lazy.

11、据说他一直在学英语。
    He is said to have been studying English.

12、一个乘务员站在每个舱门口，欢迎旅客登机。
    A stewardess stands at each cabin door to welcome the passengers.
KEY -- LESSON TWENTY FOUR

LESSON TWENTY FOUR

动名词

课堂练习答案（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

本栏目题全部来自历年原卷

选择。

1. In thick fog I was afraid ______.
   A. of knocking down  B. of being knocked down
   C. being knocked down  D. knocking down
   注：afraid of 后应接动名词，怕被撞上，应用被动。

2. The film was very moving, I regret ______ it.
   A. to miss  B. having missed
   C. having to miss  D. to be missed
   注：regret 后接动名词表示后悔，接不定式表示抱歉，B为正确答案，完成时表示加强语气。

3. I know you hate smoking, would you mind ______ here?
   A. smoking  B. to smoke
   C. my smoking  D. for me to smoke
   注：考点为不定式的逻辑主语。

4. Give me some paper ______.
   A. to write on  B. writing
   C. written  D. to be written
   注：不定式做定语与所定名词为动宾关系，注意不可丢掉on。

5. The stewardesses also attempt ______ passengers who have language difficulties.
   A. to be identified  B. to identify
   C. identifying  D. identified
   注：attempt后跟不定式，应用主动。

6. In addition ______ the regular cabin checks, the attendants should answer call buttons promptly and courteously.
   A. to making  B. to make
   C. making  D. make
   注：In addition to是介词，后跟动名词。
7. The way ______ how to swim is by swimming.
   A. to learn  B. learning  C. to be learnt  D. having learnt
   注：抽象名词后用不定式作定语。

8. I regret ______ to see you when you were ill.
   A. having been unable  B. not able  C. being able  D. not have been able
   注：regret 后跟动名词，表示后悔，完成更强调发生在谓语动词之前。

9. He said he regretted ______ her the truth.
   A. not having told  B. not being told  C. to be telling  D. to be told
   注：应用动名词主动，表示后悔。

10. What do you need ______?
    A. buying  B. to be bought  C. to buy  D. have bought
    注：在need后面用动名词更像一个名词，很少跟宾语，而不定式更像动词，可跟宾语。

11. I remember ______ for the job, but I forget the exact amount.
    A. being paid  B. to pay  C. paying  D. to have paid
    注：remember 后已经付过，应用动名词。

12. I’m not used ______ in America.
    A. to live  B. living  C. to living  D. I live
    注：used to do 表示过去常常做某事，而现在往往不做了。如：
    I used to get up early in the morning when I was still a high school student.
    be used to doing 表示习惯于做某事。如：
    I am used to eating rice now.

13. I’m not used ______ teacher.
    A. to call  B. calling  C. to calling  D. to being called
    注：我不习惯人们叫我老师。

14. My bicycle needs ______.
    A. to be repaired  B. being repaired  C. repaired  D. to have repaired
    注：need 后不定式应用被动，动名词用主动。
15. This is the plan ______ tomorrow.
   A. to be discussed           B. being discussed
   C. having to discuss        D. to discuss
   注：不定式做定语表示将来，计划是被讨论，所以用A。

16. Her first reaction ______ the police.
   A. was calling               B. she would call
   C. was to call               D. being called
   注：不定式做表语。

17. People prefer paying large sum of money ______ their life work (一生的事业) destroyed by gangsters (强盗) .
   A. than have                B. to have
   C. to having                D. than they have
   注：人们宁愿付大笔的钱也不愿让一生的事业被强盗毁于一旦。
   prefer A to B， 在 A 和 B 中更喜欢 A。  
   例： I prefer green tea to coffee.  
   绿茶和咖啡比较起来我更喜欢绿茶。
   I prefer cooking myself to eating out.  
   我宁愿自己做饭也不愿出去吃。

18. I believe him ______ right.
   A. to be                     B. being
   C. to have being            D. to being
   注：相信某人做某事（是什么）用不定式。

19. I saw a man ______ and say something to the girl.
   A. coming up                B. will come up
   C. to come up               D. come up

20. There must be thousands of honest way ______ a decent living in our country.
   A. earning                  B. to earn
   C. having                   D. to have earned
   注：抽象名词后用不定式。

21. The flight service crew also tries ______ passenger who have never traveled by air before and help them.
   A. identifying              B. identified
   C. to be identified         D. to identify
   注：try to do 表示努力做什么。
LESSON TWENTY FIVE

分词

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登录www.teachersun.com）

1. Aviation has its tradition. In the early years, for it was influenced by the keep right (右行) rules of the road and at sea, aircraft also kept right on the airway.

   Aviation has its tradition. In the early years, influenced by the keep right (右行) rules of the road and at sea, aircraft also kept right on the airway.

2. The sky around an airport is full of different kinds of aircraft which fly at different speeds in different directions when they cross over each other at different heights.

   The sky around an airport is full of different kinds of aircraft flying at different speeds in different directions when crossing over each other at different heights.

3. There are long lines of people who are waiting to buy the tickets.

   There are long lines of people waiting to buy the tickets.

4. As soon as the meal was over, we began to work again.

   The meal being over, we began to work again.

5. After his homework was done, Jim decided to go and see the play.

   His homework done, Jim decided to go and see the play.

6. There are nine planets that are running around the sun and the earth is one of them.

   There are nine planets running around the sun and the earth is one of them.

7. I hate to see the letter that were written in pencil.

   I hate to see the letter written in pencil.
8. If everything was taken into consideration, the plan, which Tom put forward, seems to be more workable.

   If taken into consideration, the plan which Tom put forward seems to be more workable.

9. Because the last bus had gone, we had to walk home.

   The last bus having gone, we had to walk home.

10. A little girl walked past and her hair blew in the air.

    A little girl walked past, her hair blowing in the air.

11. After I talk to you I always feel better.

    After talking to you I always feel better.

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1. striking  2. touched  3. excited
4. inspiring  5. oppressed  6. smoked
7. unknown  8. charming  9. fallen
10. falling  11. interesting  12. living
13. discussed  14. bringing  15. having been educated
16. Helped  17. climbing  18. recorded
19. repaired  20. opened  21. separated
22.seen covering

课堂练习答案（3）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

LESSON TWENTY SIX -- KEY

LESSON TWENTY SIX

虚拟语气

课堂练习答案（1）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. were  2. had lost  3. was(were), will still get
4. went, would concentrate  5. had known, would have stopped（顺便访问）
6. I should have read  7. had called, would have been  8. would change, could
9. stopped  10. was(were)  11. would…do, had
12. had read  13. (should) refuse  14. (should) be held
15. went

课堂练习答案（2）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. doesn’t rain, will attend
2. had, would go 注: 该句可以用虚拟，也可不用，但意思上有所不同。用虚拟表示说话人不可能有时间去美容院。
3. couldn’t go, would…feel  4. would be, couldn’t go
5. went, would have（可用虚拟也可不用）  6. would have been, hadn’t said
7. had asked, wouldn’t have got  8. would … have seen, hadn’t introduced
9. would have finished, had asked  10. Had … known, wouldn’t have married
11. were, would … wear  12. (should) inform
13. had agreed  14. speaks, were
15. were  16. (should) resign
17. had married  18. had not mentioned
19. had learned

课堂练习答案（3）

（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. A 注: 虚拟条件句中有时用should表示一种良好的愿望。should可以前置省略if。
2. C 注: otherwise有否则的意思，应用虚拟。
3. D 注: so that 做目的状语时从句用虚拟。
4. B  5. D
6. A 注: would have married表示本应该做而没做。
17. B  18. A
19. D 注: 在suggestion, resolution, advice, hope, wish, decision, preference, requirement等表示要求、命令、建议、希望等词做主语时，后面跟表语从句时如果谓语用should +动词原形，should可省略。

228
34. D  35. D  36. B  37. A  
38. C would rather 后跟过去式  
39. A  
40. A  It is high time that 从句用过去式  
41. A  42. A  

课堂练习答案（4）
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com）

1、如果我昨天知道你要去，我也会去野餐（go out on a picnic）。  
I would have gone out on a picnic if I had realized you were going.  

2、纽约的工人要求（demand）他们的工资应该增加（increase）。  
The workers in New York demand that their wages (should) be increased.  

3、要是你不熬夜（stay up）到这么晚，会对你的身体有好处。  
It would be better for you not to stay up too late.  

4、他昨天如果没吃药，现在病就不会好。  
He would not be well now if he hadn’t taken the medicine yesterday.  

5、我很惊讶他没有认识到自己的错误。  
I’m very surprised that he should not realize his own mistake.  

6、幸亏他受过良好教育（but for his good education），否则他就得不到那份工作。  
But for his good education, he would not have got the job.  

7、我当时要在就好了。  
If only I had been here yesterday.  

8、教授坚持每个学生要把这课背下来（learn something by heart）。  
The professor insists that every student (should) learn the text by heart.  

9、即使我昨天在这，我也不会把这个消息告诉你。  
Even if I had been here yesterday, I would not have told you the news.  

10、到了我们回家的时间了。  
It’s high time that we went (should go) back home.  

11、当时要是医生在，我母亲就不会死了。  
If there had been a doctor, my mother would not have died.  

12、如果他使用新方法，他可能会取得试验的成功。  
If he had used the new method, he might have succeeded in the experiment.
LESSON TWENTY SEVEN -- KEY

情态动词与动词习惯用法

课堂练习答案（1）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

1. I’m sorry I couldn’t get in touch with him before he left, I ______ him earlier.
   A. had a telephone   B. have phoned
   C. should have phoned D. should be phoned

解析：答案选C。should+have done: 表示过去应该做某事而事实上没做。

2. I believe he ____ an accident, otherwise he ______ on time.
   A. would have had   B. could have had
   C. should have had D. must have had

解析：答案选D。must have done: 表示对过去发生事实的推测。

3. He abandoned a career that _____ to his becoming one of the most influential people in the world.
   A. could have led B. will lead C. should have led D. must lead

解析：答案选A。could have done: 表示"过去能做而没做"。句意是：他放弃了一份能让他成为世界上有影响的人物的事业。

4. You ought ______ the matter to the manager the day before yesterday.
   A. to report   B. to have reported C. to reporting D. have reported

解析：答案选B。由时间状语the day before yesterday (前天)可知，本题表示过去该做而未做

5. I can’t find the recorder in the room. It ______ by somebody.
   A. must have taken B. may have taken
   C. may have been taken D. could have been taken

解析：答案选C。表示猜测，可以用may或must。只是must的把握性更大些。本句主语it与动词take是动宾关系，所以要用被动。

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

四选一或找出错误的划线部份

1. Mary regretted ______ to John’s birthday party last Sunday.
   A. not going   B. not to go
   C. not having been going D. not to be going

解析：答案选A。regret后接动名词作宾语表示该动作已经完成。动名词的否定式是在动名词前直接加not。

www.teachersun.com
2. Nancy had a great deal of trouble to concentrate on her work because of the noise in the next room.
   A          B                                         C                   D
   解析: 答案选B。固定结构have trouble in doing sth...表示“做……事情有麻烦”，B应改为: concentrating on.

3. I spent half an hour _____ this difficult math problem.
   A. having worked on                            B. to work on
   C. on work                                      D. working on
   解析: 答案选D。固定用法spend (some time, some money) in doing sth.

4. The old man is used to _____ early in the morning.
   A. exercise                        B. exercising             C. exercised               D. exercises
   解析: 答案选B。be used to doing sth.: 习惯于做某事。句中的to是介词，因此后面接动名词。
   注意区别: used to do sth. (过去常常做某事)。

5. Don’t forget _____ the window before leaving the room.
   A. to have closed              B. to close                 C. having closed        D. closing
   解析: 答案选A。deny后面要跟动名词作宾语。A改为: having。

6. The boy denied to have seen anyone in the building when being questioned by the teacher shortly after the incident. (2001年)
   A              B                                                   C                                         D
   解析: 答案选A。deny后面要跟动名词作宾语。

7. He suggested _____ a lecture given by Professor White on English language learning.
   A. me to attend                                                   B. my attending
   C. my attention                                                   D. me attending
   解析: 答案选B。suggest建议，推荐。Suggest后面要跟动名词作宾语。形容词性物主代词my作动名词attending的逻辑主语。

8. One of the benefits of the new model is that it is easier _____ than the old one.
   A. operating                      B. to be operated       C. to operate             D. operated
   解析: 答案选C。在easy, hard, difficult, possible, impossible后的不定式中用主动表示被动。

9. In winter, animals have a hard time _____ anything to eat.
   A. to find                           B. to finding              C. to find out             D. finding
   解析: 答案选D。固定短语have a hard time doing sth. (做某事很费劲)。

10. We look forward to _____ to the opening ceremony.
    A. invite                            B. be invited             C. having been invited       D. being invited
    解析: 答案选D。look forward to doing sth.: 盼望着做某事。动作be invited还没有发生，所以不能用完成时。
LESSON TWENTY EIGHT -- KEY
孙老师课堂・三句通简单英语
www.teachersun.com

主谓一致、倒装句及强调句

课堂练习答案 (1)
（详细讲解请登入 www.teachersun.com ）

主谓一致典型试题

四选一或找出错误的划线部分。

1. When and where the new hospital will be built ________ a mystery.
   A. to remain  B. remains  C. remain  D. is remaining
   解析：答案选B。本句的主语是一个从句。当动名词，不定式，从句做主语时，谓语动词一般用单数。本句虽然有两个引导词when和where，但它们引导的是一个句子，所以谓语用单数动词。

2. The news coming from different parts of the world are often extremely discouraging these days.
   A  B  C  D
   解析：答案选C。本句主语中心是news。news是个形式是复数，意思是单数的名词，类似的词还有means(方法)，works(工厂)等，当这些词做主语时谓语动词用单数形式，应改为is。

3. The salesman told me that a good pair of glasses were supposed to last at least 3 to 4 years.
   A  B  C  D
   解析：答案选B。a good pair of glasses:一副好眼镜，做主语时，谓语动词要用单数。应改为was。

4. Nearly three quarters of the surface of the earth are covered with water, and there would be even
   A  B  C  D
   less land if the polar icecaps were melt.
   解析：答案选B。句子主语是three quarters of the surface of the earth。分数词修饰一个名词做主语时，谓语动词的变化与这个名词一致。本句修饰的这个名词surface是不可数名词，所以谓语动词用单数。

5. Neither John nor I ________ able to persuade Richard’s grandfather to attend the wedding.
   A. am  B. are  C. are to be  D. is
   解析：答案选A。neither…nor…引导并列主语时，谓语动词与nor后的主语单复数形式一致。本题谓语应与I一致。

6. Many a person in this circumstance ________ for a long break.
   A. have hoped  B. has hoped  C. are hoping  D. has been hoped
   解析：答案选B。“many a+名词”用作句子主语时谓语动词要用单数。由于many a person (许多
7. The teacher, as well as all his students, ______ by the dancer’s performance.

A. was impressed  B. had impressed  C. impressed  D. were impressed

解析：答案选A。主语后跟有as well as引导的短语时，谓语动词与主语一致。本句中谓语的单复数形式与the teacher一致。

8. The director and manager of the department are very strict with the employees.

A.  B.  C. impressed  D.

解析：答案选C。两个并列名词前只有一个冠词时指的是一个人。本句中the director和manager是同一个人的两个职务。因此谓语用单数形式。

9. A number of errors made by him was surprising.

A. B. can you find C. did he stop D.

解析：答案选A。"the number of+名词"表示"……的数量"，做主语时，谓语动词用单数；"a number of+名词复数"表示"许多"，做主语时，谓语动词用复数。

课堂练习答案（2）
（详细讲解请登入www.teachersun.com）

四选一或找出错误的划线部分。

1. Nowhere else in the world ______ more attractive scenery than in Switzerland.

A. you can find  B. is found  C. can you find  D. has been found

解析：答案选C。否定词nowhere放在句首，句子部分倒装。常放在句首的否定词有：no, not, not until, nowhere (没有地方)，never (从不)，hardly, scarcely (几乎不)，little (几乎没有)等。

2. Young ______ he is, he knows what is the right thing to do.

A. that  B. as  C. although  D. however

解析：答案选B。as引导的让步状语从句时，从句经常采用表语或状语倒装的方式。

3. Not until I reminded him for the third time ______ working and looked up.

A. that he stopped  B. does he stopped  C. did he stop  D. that he stopped

解析：答案选C。not until引导从句放在句首时，主句要部分倒装。即将助动词提到主语之前。

4. Not always ______ they want to.

A. people can do what  B. people cannot do what  C. can people do what  D. can’t people do what

解析：答案选C。否定词放在句首，句子倒装。
5. At no time and under no circumstances will China be the first to use nuclear weapons.
   A B C D

解析：答案选B。at no time和under no circumstances是含有否定词的词组，放在句首时，句子要倒装。因此应改为will China.

6. So little ______ about stock exchange that the lecture was completely beyond me.
   A. did I know  B. I had known  C. I knew  D. was I known

解析：答案选A。little是具有否定意义的词，置于句首句子要部分倒装。

7. ______ you were busy, I wouldn’t have bothered you with my questions.
   A. If I realized  B. Had I realized  C. Did I have realized that  D. As I realized

解析：答案选B。根据题意，从句表示对过去发生事情的假设，因此从句要用过去完成时。B项将if省略，助动词提到主语之前。

附加疑问句典型试题
1. You ______ you have seen the film, ______?
   A. had you  B. didn’t you  C. did you  D. weren’t you

解析：答案选C。本句考查反意疑问句的用法。本题是对主句进行反意提问。如果陈述部分含有表示否定意思的词如hardly, seldom, never, little等时，反意问句则用肯定问句。
KEY -- LESSON TWENTY EIGHT

2. Don’t forget to write to me, ________?
   A. will you       B. didn’t you       C. are you       D. don’t you
   解析：答案选A。这里考查祈使句的反意疑问句。祈使句的反意疑问句除了以let’s开头的用“shall we?”其他的都用“will you?”。

3. Please let us have more time, ________.
   A. shall we       B. will you       C. won’t
   解析：答案选B。祈使句的反意疑问句除了let’s引导的祈使句用shall we反问外，一律使用will you反问。

4. I suppose you are not serious, ________.
   A. do I       B. don’t I       C. are you       D. aren’t you
   解析：答案选C。suppose后接宾语从句，句末的附加问句与宾语从句部分相呼应，宾语从句是肯定，附加问句用否定；宾语从句是否定，附加问句就用肯定。

5. I don’t think you’ve heard of him before, ________?
   A. don’t       B. do I       C. have you       D. haven’t you
   解析：答案选C。主句中的否定是从句中否定的转移，因此对从句的附加问句要用肯定形式。

6. She scarcely cares for anything, ________?
   A. doesn’t       B. does she       C. is she       D. isn’t she
   解析：答案选B。陈述句中的scarcely是具有否定意义的词，因此附加问句用肯定形式。